المراجعة رقم (1)







Revision on Unit 1
Green cities

Vocabulary

roof	سطح	apartment block	عمارة - مبنى سكني
volunteers	متطوعون	community garden	حديقة مجتمعية
neighborhood	حي سكني	natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي
organization	منظمة	mini forest	غابة مصغرة
nature	الطبيعة	local communities	مجتمعات محلية
information	معلومات	wildlife	حياة برية
climate	المناخ	railway line	خط سكة حديد
weather	الطقس	local residents	سكان محليون
season	فصل - موسم	theater performance	عرض مسرحي
village	قرية	pass through	يمر عبر
branches	غصون الأشجار - فروع الأشجار	selfish	أناني
project	مشروع	giant	عملاق
floor	طابق - دور	hang out	يخرج مع - يتسكع

Language

The present simple tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

- يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من التصريف الأول للفعل.
- نضيف للفعل **(s - es)** إذا كان الفاعل مفرد غائب **(He - She - It - أي اسم مفرد)**.
- يعبر عن عادات أو أفعال متكررة الحدوث.
- تُسْتَخْدَم بعض ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط مثل:

(always - usually - often - sometimes - rarely - never)

- تُسْتَخْدَم هذه الكلمات قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد **(verb to be)**.

- I always watch TV in the evening.
- Ahmed is always good to his friends.
- How often do you go to the club?
- I usually go to the club.

Pronunciation

"th" يمكن أن تُنْطَق **/θ/** كما في

think - thanks - bath

"s" يمكن أن تُنْطَق **/s/** كما في

sum - bus - sunny

Dictation:

سماد طبيعي	....	عمارة	....
يحصد	....	حديقة مجتمعية	....
....	organic	حيّ سكني	....
....	dates	متطوعون	....
....	chemicals	يزرع	....
....	fresh food	سطح	....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحصد	....	يأكل	....
يزرع	....	يبيع	....
make	....	meet	....
come	....	يذهب	....
يحب	....	produce	....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

....	غابة مصغرة	....	منظمة
....	طقس	....	مناخ
	مجتمعات محليّة	....	حياة برية
....	الطبيعة	....	معلومات
on holiday	....	**look after**	....
on a farm	....	**roof**	....

Verbs

Present	Past
.... يجمع	....
.... يتكلم	....
.... يعطي	....
.... يفهم	....
.... يتصل	....

Present	Past
.... يعيش	....
.... ينقر على	....
offer	....
find out	....
bring	....

Lesson 3

Dictation:

أناني	....	خط سكة حديد	....
عملاق	....	سكان محليون	....
غصون الأشجار	....	أعمال فنية	....
....	village	طابق - دور	....
....	species of plants	يتسكع - يخرج مع	....
....	theater performance	....	pass through

Verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يرى	....	يفتقد ....
....	write	....	يفتح ....
....	go out	....	يجري ....
....	يشارك	....	يبني ....
....	يسقط	....	wake up ....

Dictation:

....	Scottish food	وسط المدينة	....
....	squares	عسل	....
....	write back soon	طعام مصري	....

Revision on Unit 2
We are all different

Vocabulary

friendly	ودود	laboratories	مَعَامِل - مختبرات
calm	هادئ	equipment	مُعِدَّات - أدوات
polite	مؤدب - مهذب	noise	ضوضاء
brave	شجاع	do experiments	يُجْرِي تجارب
organized	مُنَظَّم	soft fur	فرو ناعم
independent	مستقل - معتمد على ذاته	sharp claws	مخالب حادة
shy	خجول	physical education	التربية البدنية - الألعاب
messy	فوضوي - غير مُرَتَّب	west court	الملعب الغربي
nervous	متوتر - قَلِق	math department	قسم الرياضيات
benches	مقاعد	positive points	نقاط إيجابية
gymnasium	صالة الألعاب الرياضية	negative points	نقاط سلبية
gymnastics	رياضة الجمباز	well-being	سعادة - سلامة نفسية
stomach	مَعِدَة	loud voice	صوتٌ عالٍ

Language

who - which - where

(who) تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول عاقل

- Mr Ali is the teacher who runs the football club.

(which) تحل محل فاعل أو مفعول غير عاقل

- This is the cat which ate the fish.

(where) تُستخدم لوصف أو تعريف مكان

- This is the school where I learn.

(ed) adjectives - (ing) adjectives

- I was excited on watching the football match.
- The football match was exciting.

But لكن

تستخدم لربط جملتين يعبران عن التناقض.

- He is poor, but he is happy.

Pronunciation & Math

"u" يمكن أن ننطقها /ʌ/ كما في كلمات

cut - hut - bug

"o" يمكن أن ننطقها /ʌ/ كما في كلمات

come - some - honey

"a" يمكن أن ننطقها /æ/ كما في كلمات

cat - hat - bag

يمكننا تقريب الأعداد العشرية للأكبر أو للأصغر لأقرب رقم صحيح.



2.68 → 3.00		135.3 → 135	
7.95 → 8.00		1.11 → 1.00	
12.96 → 13.00		7.35 → 7.00	

Lesson 1

Dictation:

مُنَظَّم	خجول ....
فوضوي - غير مُرَتَّب	مؤدب ....
ماهر - شاطر	متوتر - قَلِق ....
هادئ	ودود ....
at home	break ....
help with	good at ....

Verbs

Present	Past
ينظر	....
يبدأ	....
يكتب	....
يأخذ	....
يرسم	....

Present	Past
يخمن	....
يحصل على	....
organize	....
meet	....
feel	....

Dictation:

الألعاب - التربية البدنية	....	مقاعد	....
نافورة ماء	....	معدات - أدوات	....
مشكلة	....	الملعب الغربي - الساحة الغربية	....
سفينة فضائية	....	معامل - مختبرات	....
in the future	....	**medicine**	....
proud of	....	**interested in**	....

Verbs

Present	Past
يطير - يسافر جوًا	....
يدير	....
take place	....
tell	....
contact	....

Present	Past
يستعير	....
يسافر	....
ينمو - يزرع	....
يشترى	....
يَدْرُس	....

Lesson 3

Dictation:

أرنب بري	....	غابة	....
فأر	....	بحيرة	....
ضوضاء	....	شجاع	....
فيل	....	قرد	....
look at	....	afraid of	....
run away	....	ask for help	....

Verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يعود	....	يتذكر ....
....	يصنع - يجعل	....	يضحك ....
....	get to	....	يُدَوِّن ....
....	come in	....	يرى ....
....	run back	....	يبكي ....

Dictation:

يربي (حيوانات)	طائر ....
مخالب حادة	سحلية ....
قطة	حيوان أليف ....
positive points	well-being ....
independent	soft fur ....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يلمس	....	use	....
يحتاج	....	include	....

Revision on Unit 3
Vacation plans

Vocabulary

vacation	إجازة - عطلة	destination	الغاية - المكان المقصود
hotel	فندق	rollercoaster	قطار الملاهي
tour	جولة سياحية	quad biking	ركوب الدراجات الرباعية
guide	مرشد	top	قمة
monument	أثر تاريخي - مَعْلَم أثري	regular breaks	فترات استراحة منتظمة
secret	سر	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
dome	قبة	great view	منظر رائع - إطلالة رائعة
hill	تل	famous places	أماكن شهيرة
river	نهر	teenage girl	فتاة في سن المراهقة
puddle	بركة ماء	world of fantasy	عالم خيالي
stream	جدول مائي	waterfalls	لعبة الشلالات
shows	عروض	birthday surprise	مفاجأة عيد ميلاد
stores	متاجر	bank details	تفاصيل بنكية

Language & Prepositions

The zero conditional (If) / (When)

حالة **(If)** الصفرية

If (When) + present simple ➜ **present simple / (can) + inf**

If (When) + مضارع بسيط ➜ مضارع بسيط **/ (can) +** المصدر

- If we go by bus, it is quicker.
- The tablet switches off when you press this button.

Prepositions of time

in ➜ the morning, March, Spring, 2020

on ➜ Monday, May 20th, the weekend

at ➜ ten o'clock, night, lunchtime

Pronunciation

كما في **/w/** تُنْطَق **"w"**

wolf - window - web

كما في **/v/** تُنْطَق **"v"**

vet - van - village

Dictation:

ركوب الدراجات الرباعية	....	إجازة	....
قطار الملاهي	....	فندق	....
غروب الشمس	....	مئذنة	....
قمة	....	منظر - إطلالة	....
come back	....	explore the souks	....
excited about	....	take photos	....

Verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يركب	....	يزور ....
....	يأتي	....	يشاهد ....
....	explore	....	يتسلق ....
....	plan	....	يختار ....
....	say	....	يغادر - يترك ....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

وقت المذاكرة	....	شركة	....
خَصم	....	رحلة	....
مشكلة	....	مُرشد	
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	....	تفاصيل بنكية	....
tour	....	**regular breaks**	....
trip	....	**credit card**	....

Verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يجرب	....	يحجز ....
....	يدفع	....	يسقي - يروي ....
....	catch	....	يسافر ....
....	mean	....	يجد ....
....	give	....	يعرف ....

Lesson 3

Dictation:

غابة	أثر تاريخي - مَعلَم أثري ....
نهر	سر ....
بحيرة	قبة ....
شجاع	تل ....
brave	**deer** ....
afraid of	**famous places** ....

Verbs

Present	Past
يصيح	....
يخاف	....
يتلألأ - يلمع	....
يأكل	....
يشرب	....

Present	Past
يبتسم	....
يذهب	....
understand	....
run	....
think	....

Dictation:

الغاية - المكان المقصود	متعة - مَرَح ....
عالم خيالي	عروض ....
تذاكر	متاجر ....
مقعد	شجاع ....
sound and light effects	**simulation theater** ....
title	**carnival** ....

Revision on Unit 4
Celebrate Good Times!

Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
exams	امتحانات	blow up the balloons	ينفخ البالونات
celebrations	احتفالات	send the invitations	يرسل الدعوات
adults	أشخاص بالغون	make a playlist	يقوم بإعداد قائمة أغاني
decorate the birthday cake	يُزَيِّن كعكة عيد الميلاد	let off the fireworks	يطلق الألعاب النارية
guests	ضيوف	study hard	يذاكر بجد
traditions	تقاليد	presents	هدايا
special day	يوم مميز	local community	مجتمع محلي
snacks	وجبات خفيفة	party food	طعام الحفلات
scissors	مقص	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
indoors	داخل البيت	event	حَدَث
e-mail invitations	دعوات بالبريد الإلكتروني	hang up the streamers	يُعَلِّق أشرطة الزينة المُلَوَّنة
flame	لهب	noodles	نودلز (مكرونة صينية)

Language

The present continuous tense

(am - is - are) + (v) الفعل + ing

- يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن ومستمر أثناء الكلام.

❍ I am playing football now.

- يُستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عن نشاط يتم في الفترة الحالية وليس بالضرورة أن يقع لحظة الكلام.

❍ I am studying for my exams this week.

- يُستخدم أيضًا لوصف الأشياء التي تحدث في الصورة.

❍ What are Noha and Dalida doing there in the picture?

❍ They're playing football with the balloons.

Keywords — الكلمات الدالة

now	الآن	today	اليوم
at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	this (week)	هذا (الأسبوع)
look	انظر	listen	استمع - أنصت

- Look! A dog is playing with a cat.
- Are you reading now? ↳ Yes, I am. ↳ No, I am not.
- What are you doing, girls?
  ↳ We're helping to make the birthday cake.

Pronunciation & Math

"a" تُنْطَق /ei/ كما في

cake - train - say - main

"e" تُنْطَق /e/ كما في

bed - head - shed - men

Estimating volume

when we talk about the amount of something, we don't always need to be exact. We can **estimate**, or guess, the amount. We often use the word **about** when giving an estimation.

عندما نتحدث عن كمية شيءٍ ما، لا نحتاج لأن نكون دقيقين دائمًا. يمكننا تقدير الكمية أو تخمينها. غالبًا ما نستخدم كلمة "حوالي" عند إعطاء تقدير.

Lesson 1

Dictation:

يقوم بإعداد قائمة تشغيل (أغاني)	يُعَلِّق أشرطة الزينة المُلَوَّنة ....
يطلق الألعاب النارية	ينفخ البالونات ....
مقص	يُزَيِّن كعكة عيد الميلاد ....
خيط	يرسل الدعوات ....
scissors	**birthday party** ....
in the yard	**pass me** ....

Verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يُزَيِّن	....	يناقش ....
....	يربط	....	يساعد ....
....	hang up	....	يُمَرِّر - يناول ....
....	let off	....	يقرأ ....
....	send	....	يقص - يقطع ....

Dictation:

نقوم ببعض التمرينات	....	امتحانات	....
يركب دراجة	....	وثائقي	....
يستعير	....	قارئ بطيء	....
يذاكر - يَدْرُس	....	مراجعة	....
get outside	....	study hard	....
look forward to	....	indoors	....

Verbs

Present		Past
يقضي (وقت)	....	....
يذهب	....	....
wear	....	....
bake	....	....
practice	....	....

Present		Past
يستمتع	....	....
يلعب	....	....
يعيش	....	....
يكتب	....	....
يُطعم	....	....

Lesson 3

Dictation:

يُطفئ	احتفالات ....
نَفَس واحد	أشخاص بالغون ....
وجبات خفيفة	هدايا ....
نيران	ضيوف ....
come out of	**on birthdays** ....
on the day they are born	**at this age** ....

Verbs

Present	Past
.... يعطي	....
.... يصبح	....
.... يحتفل	....
.... يدعو - يعزم	....
.... يغني	....

Present	Past
.... يُخَمِّن	....
.... يُنَتِج	....
get	....
make	....
show	....

Dictation:

يوم مميز	يحضر ....
زِيّ	يؤكد ....
شخصية	رد - إجابة ....
جائزة مذهلة	يستلم - يتلقى ....
dress up	Mother's Day celebration ....
figure out	local community ....

Verbs

Present	Past
يساعد	....
ينظم	....
يدعو - يعزم	....
يرد	....

Present	Past
يحتفل	....
يستلم - يتلقى	....
attend	....
confirm	....

Revision on Unit 5
Amazing Journeys

Vocabulary

journey	رحلة طويلة	large eyes	عيون كبيرة
voyage	رحلة بحرية	iron farming tools	أدوات زراعة حديدية
traveler	مسافر - رحالة	advanced culture	ثقافة متقدمة
adventure	مغامرة	famous works	أعمال مشهورة
discovery	اكتشاف	famous explorers	مستكشفون مشهورون
clay	فخار - صلصال	sand dunes	كثبان رملية
mystery	لغز	sailing boat	قارب شراعي
stone	حجارة - حجرية	on the River Nile	في نهر النيل
caravan	قافلة	the Great Pyramid	الهرم الأكبر
archaeologists	علماء الآثار	sail	شراع - يبحر
sculptures	تماثيل	warm sunshine	أشعة الشمس الدافئة
dromedaries	الجِمَال العربية	legends	أساطير
skills	مهارات	wander	يتجوَّل -يهيم

Language

The past simple tense
زمن الماضي البسيط

- يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل.
- يُستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت وانتهت في الماضي.

❍ I played football yesterday.
❍ Heba went to the zoo last week.

Keywords		الكلمات الدالة	
once	ذات مرة	in the past	في الماضي
last	السابق - الماضي	ago	منذ
yesterday	أمس	one day	في يوم ما

- النفي باستخدام **(didn't)** ثم الفعل في المصدر.

❍ He didn't go out with his friends last weekend.

- عند عمل سؤال على الماضي البسيط، نبدأ السؤال بـ **(Did)** أو نضعها بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

❍ Did you watch the match yesterday?
↳ Yes, I did. ↳ No, I didn't.

❍ What did you do yesterday?
↳ I went to the park yesterday.

Pronunciation

"g" تنطق **/dʒ/** كما في

huge - fridge - age

"s" تنطق **/ʒ/** كما في

measure - treasure - pleasure

Dictation:

مغامرة	....	رحلة قصيرة	....
تجارب - خبرات	....	رحلة طويلة	....
يوميات السفر	....	رحلة بحرية	....
مستكشفون مشهورون	....	مسافر	....
on vacation	....	get to	....
on foot	....	far away	....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعمل	....	يريد	....
يتذكر	....	يتوقف	....
يبحر	....	arrive	....
يطير	....	do	....
يأخذ	....	can	....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

علماء آثار	اكتشاف ....
تماثيل - منحوتات	فخار - صلصال ....
أعمال مشهورة	حجارة ....
فن جميل	حضارة ....
quality	famous for ....
inspiration	mystery ....

Verbs

Present	Past
يذكُر	....
يتعلم	....

Present	Past
believe	....
agree	....

Dictation:

يتجول - يهيم	....	الجِمال العربية (نوع من الجِمال)	....
يتأرجح - يتمايل	....	قافله	....
أساطير	....	كثبان رمليه	....
أخبار جيدة	....	مغامرة	....
go for a walk	....	go on	....
on the horizon	....	for the first time	....

Verbs

Present		Past
يعبر	....	....
يغلي	....	....
يتحرك	....	....
يتخيل	....	....
يستمر - يدوم	....	....

Present		Past
يتجمد	....	....
يتوه - يضل الطريق	....	....
look like	....	....
come up	....	....
spend time	....	....

Dictation:

حياة	يركب على متن فلوكه ....
مهارات	في نهر النيل ....
قديم جدًا	قارب شراعي ....
سحري	شراع - يبحر ....
warm sunshine	the Great Pyramid ....
awesome	made of ....

Revision on Unit 6
Taking care

Vocabulary

candle	شمعة	herbs	أعشاب
wax	شمع	paintings	رسومات
festival	مهرجان - احتفال	popsicle sticks	أعواد مثلجات
palace	قصر	drops	قطرات
crown	تاج	perfume oil	زيت العطور
scepter	صولجان	personal care	عناية شخصية
throne	كرسي العرش	hairbrush	فرشاة شعر
king	مَلِك	lean	يستند - يميل - ينحني
queen	ملكة	heat	يُسَخِّن
soap	صابون	stir	يُقَلِّب
flavors	نكهات	spices	توابل
souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	recipe	وصفة

Language

Nouns الأسماء

- معظم الأسماء تُعد، ولها صيغة مُفرد وصيغة جمع

boy ⟶ boys	story ⟶ stories	wolf ⟶ wolve

- بعض الأسماء لا تُعد، وهي التي ليس لها صيغة جمع، وتعامل معاملة المفرد مثل:

cheese - bread - butter - rice - milk - water - orange juice time - money - news - information - homework - traffic

Expressions of quantities تعبيرات الكميات

some بعض ⟶ اسم يُعد / اسم لا يُعد «الجمل المثبتة - سؤالي العرض والطلب»

- There's some bread in the basket.
- There are some eggs in the basket.
- Would you bring me some juice, please?

any أي ⟶ اسم يُعد / اسم لا يُعد «الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية»

- There aren't any eggs in the fridge.
- Is there any water in the glass?

a lot of كثير من ⟶ اسم يُعد / اسم لا يُعد الجمل المثبتة

- There's a lot of milk in the bottle.
- I have a lot of friends.

many كثير من ⟶ اسم يُعد الجمل المنفية

- There aren't many eggs in the fridge.

a few قليل من ⟶ اسم يُعد الجمل المثبتة

- I have a few apples.

much كثير من ⟶ اسم لا يُعد الجمل المنفية

- There isn't much oil in the bottle.

a little قليل من ⟶ اسم لا يُعد الجمل المثبتة

- There's a little sugar in her tea.

There is ⟶ يوجد «للمفرد»
There are ⟶ يوجد «للجمع»

- There is some milk in this bottle.
- There are some apples in the bag.

How many + اسم يُعد جمع ⟶ كم عدد

- How many lemons do we need for the lemonade?
- We need five lemons.

How much + اسم لا يُعد ⟶ كم كمية

- How much oil do we need?

Lesson 1

Dictation:

....	شمعة	....	زيت العطور
....	شمع	....	حبل قطنى
....	قطرات	....	أشجار النخيل
....	يُقلِّب	....	زجاجة
popsicle sticks	....	cotton rope	....
instructions	....	palm trees	....

Verbs

Present		Past
....	يشم	....
....	يضغط	....
....	ينصهر - يصهر	....
....	يستخدم	....
....	يحتاج	....

Present		Past
....	يحمل - يمسك	....
....	يجد	....
discuss	....	....
squeeze	....	....
listen	....	....

Dictation:

خليط - مزيج	....	رسومات	....
زبدة	....	مهرجان - احتفال	....
بلح - تمر	....	أعشاب	....
توابل	....	خضراوات	....
preserve	....	hibiscus tea	....
lentils	....	vanilla essence	....

Verbs

Present		Past
يضيف	....	....
يطبخ	....	....
يُجَفِّف	....	....
يتذوق	....	....
يزرع	....	....

Present		Past
يأكل	....	....
يشرب	....	....
take care	....	....
have	....	....
depend on	....	....

Lesson 3

Part 1

Dictation:

صولجان	قصر ....
أمير	تاج ....
أميرة	كرسي العرش ....
ملكى	ملك ....
astonished	statues ....
at once	queen ....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يخبر	....	يستند - يميل	....
يلاحظ	....	يطرق - يدق	....
get out	....	يُنَظِّف	....
understand	....	يَسْقُط	....
hear	....	يجلس	....

Part 2

Dictation:

عناية شخصية	....	صابون	....
فرشاة شعر	....	شامبو	....
معجون أسنان	....	عِطْر	....
فرشاة أسنان	....	منتجات	....
....	tied to	....	mint candies
....	ingredients	....	expensive

Verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يلتصق	....	يخلط ....
....	يبقى	....	يُغَطِّي ....
....	.... wear	....	يدعك - يفرك ....
....	.... mean	....	يَبرُد ....

Dictation:

فرن	نكهات ....
طريقة	هدايا تذكارية ....
مشهور بـ	صَلْب ....
دواء	وصفة ....
delicious dishes	**packaged spices** ....
baking tray	**bowl** ....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يبدأ	....	يُكَوِّن	....
يخلط	....	heat	....
يضيف	....	bake	....



هدية كتاب **Step Ahead** لطلاب الصف السادس **بالإجابات النموذجية**

السؤال المُضاف حديثًا طبقًا لمواصفات أسئلة الامتحان الجديدة
وطبعًا زي ما عودناكم، السؤال مغطي كل أجزاء المنهج



Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We .... (works) in the community garden.
2. Where does Mariam .... (goes) on Fridays?
3. Do you want to .... (coming) to my house?
4. I always .... (helps) my aunt at the community garden.
5. The people .... (which) work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood.
6. What things .... (are) you grow?
7. We usually .... (plants) tomatoes, peppers and Lettuce.
8. This year, we .... (has) lemons and dates.
9. We only use natural fertilizer; it .... (mean) we never use chemicals.
10. Where does Mariam go .... (in) Fridays?
11. Does your garden .... (produces) a lot of vegetables?
12. Does your family .... (has) a garden or a balcony?

Lesson (2)

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We always .... (works) hard.
2. They .... (collects) data from every forest they plant.
3. This .... (help) us understand the effects of the new green space.
4. We rarely .... (has) enough volunteers.

5 We .... (be) always happy when people offer to help us.
6 The new green spaces .... (helps) people and animals.
7 We .... (always are) happy when people offer to help us.
8 It rarely .... (rain) in the western Desert.
9 How .... (many) do you go to the dentist? - Twice a year.
10 Osama usually .... (go) to school by bus.

Lesson (3)

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 What .... (does) you like about your neighborhood?
2 Wael is in New York .... (since) a year with his family.
3 Our apartment is .... (in) the sixteenth floor.
4 New York .... (have) a lot of green spaces.
5 Years ago, the High Line .... (is) a railway line.
6 In the 1998s trains .... (stop) using the High Line.
7 New York .... (be) very noisy all the time.
8 I think the food .... (taste) more delicious in Egypt.
9 There .... (is) colorful birds singing in the trees.
10 The lovely garden always .... (make) the children happy.

Lesson (4)

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 What does she .... (missing) about Egypt?
2 I like Scotland, but there .... (be) lots of things I miss about Egypt.
3 Scottish food .... (be) OK, but Egyptian food is better!
4 For breakfast a lot of Scottish people .... (eats) porridge.
5 They usually .... (makes) it with milk.
6 The people here .... (be) nice.
7 I .... (has) a lot of new friends at school.
8 Please .... (writing) back soon.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We .... (be) all different.
2. Each person .... (have) a different way of moving.
3. People .... (which) move in similar ways often become friends.
4. What does Basel .... (offers) to share with Hazem?
5. I can .... (helping) you get to know the school.
6. Basel is very good .... (in) math.
7. Welcome .... (at) our school.
8. Do you .... (had) all your books?
9. I'll show you .... (when) the science classroom is.
10. How does Asser .... (helps) Hazem?
11. Sara is very friendly. She likes .... (to talk) to people.
12. If a new student is shy, we .... (shouldn't) help him make friends.

Lesson (2)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mr Mahdi is the teacher .... (which) helps in the garden.
2. We are proud .... (with) our school.
3. This is the building .... (which) you can find our computer classrooms.
4. There .... (is) four classrooms.
5. Mr Afifi is the teacher .... (which) runs the football club.
6. These are the shoes .... (where) I wear to school.
7. Children can .... (grows) plants with Mr Mahdi.
8. Dalia is the girl .... (which) sits next to me in the English class.
9. An ostrich is a big bird .... (who) can't fly.
10. This is the street .... (which) my uncle lives.
11. I really love the red, flowers .... (who) grow in our garden.

12 The supermarket is the place .... (which) we buy food.
13 Hani is my friend .... (which) has a pet lizard.
14 Bees are insects .... (who) make honey.
15 A pharmacy is a shop .... (which) you can buy medicine.
16 I am .... (exciting)!
17 She is .... (interesting) in science.
18 This football match is .... (excited).
19 This TV show is really .... (interested).
20 Hi Fareeda, I'm .... (surprising) to see you!

Lesson (3)

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 It's a sunny day, and Hare .... (lie) in the grass.
2 When hare gets to her door, she .... (stop).
3 If you come in, I .... (would) eat you.
4 Hare runs to the forest .... (which) her clever friend monkey lives.
5 Hare .... (feel) hungry.
6 Happy Hare .... (have) some nuts.
7 Hatem's classroom .... (need) painting.
8 They run to the lake .... (which) their friend Elephant lives.

Lesson (4)

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 What does he .... (said) about the negative points?
2 Cats .... (be) my favorite animals.
3 We want to go to the beach, ... (and) it's raining.
4 Cats are beautiful with soft fur .... (where) is nice to touch.
5 Cats .... (has) sharp claws and teeth.
6 When you pet a cat, it .... (make) you happy.
7 My new school is great .... (so) it's far from my house.



Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

9 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Let's .... (going) quad biking on Tuesday.
2. I'm .... (exciting) about our vacation this week.
3. Why don't we .... (trying) new places?
4. We can .... (traveled) to Cairo.
5. If we go to the museum on Sunday, we .... (could) take photos for my school project.
6. If we take the bus, we .... (would) arrive in about 30 minutes.
7. Let's .... (climbs) the Bab Zuweila minaret.
8. If we .... (be) there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.
9. In the morning, we can .... (explores) the souks.
10. Let's go to the Manial Palace Museum .... (in) Tuesday.

Lesson (2)

10 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. If we .... (books) the tour today, it's cheaper.
2. They .... (has to) know how to ride a quad bike.
3. The tablet .... (switch) off if you press this button.
4. Samer should .... (listens) to the guide.
5. If you heat sugar, it .... (melt).
6. My English always .... (get better) when I study the lessons again at home.
7. The freezer .... (didn't) work if you don't close the door properly.
8. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim .... (on) spring.
9. Let's meet outside the school .... (in) 10:30 am.

10 We had a science class .... (at) Monday.

11 They went on a trip to the Red Sea .... (on) July.

12 What did you do .... (in) the weekend?

Lesson (3)

11 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 What do you .... (thinks) the story is about?

2 Can we .... (going) to the dome of Abu Al-Hawa?

3 How can Fatima .... (to climb) up the hill to the dome?

4 Let's .... (goes) on Tuesday in the afternoon.

5 It's Tuesday and the girls .... (be) at the dome of Abou Al-Hawa.

6 Where does this story .... (happens)?

7 How .... (do) Fatima feel after she faces her fear?

8 When .... (be) the last time you faced something you feared?

9 I once .... (find) a spider in our bathroom!

10 Where does little Deer .... (has) a drink?

11 Little Deer goes to the lake and .... (have) a drink.

12 I visited a very old village and .... (buys) a very nice violin.

Lesson (4)

12 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Today .... (be) my birthday.

2 The carnival is really .... (excited).

3 There is a lot to see and .... (doing) there.

4 The children's section .... (have) nine rides including the Orient train.

5 What can you .... (does) there?

6 Why do you .... (likes) it?

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

13 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Do you often .... (goes) to birthday parties?
2. What do you .... (doing) there?
3. Hi Youssef, what are you .... (do)?
4. I'm .... (hang) up the streamers for my sister's party.
5. Will you .... (passes) me the scissors, please?
6. They .... (be) decorating the birthday cake now.
7. Are you .... (send) the invitations?
8. How .... (much) people are coming?

Lesson (2)

14 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Do the boys .... (lived) in the same city?
2. I'm .... (study) hard for exams at the moment.
3. I'm cycling .... (in) the weekends with my dad.
4. My friend Asser is .... (organize) a party at his house for the end of the exams.
5. We are all .... (looks) forward to that.
6. What are you .... (read)?
7. She will .... (gets) me the DVD.
8. Who is .... (to wear) a blue T-shirt?

Lesson (3)

15 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. People often .... (gives) other people birthday cards.
2. Children everywhere .... (likes) party food.
3. In India, the birthday child .... (give) cake to all the guests at their party first.
4. Some countries .... (has) different birthday food.
5. Who do we usually .... (inviting) to birthday parties?

Lesson (4)

16 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. When does Randa .... (asks) to receive Mr Ahmed's reply?
2. I am .... (write) to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year.
3. We are .... (invite) people from the local community.
4. Please reply to confirm if you can .... (attends) the celebration.
5. We .... (has) an amazing prize for the best costume.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

17 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Where did they .... (went) on vacation?
2. Marco polo .... (were) an Italian explorer.
3. How .... (do) people get to China in the past?
4. He stopped and .... (go) across the desert.
5. He went to China eight hundred years .... (since).
6. Where .... (be) your last vacation or trip?
7. How did you .... (traveled) there?
8. I .... (go) to Dahab with my grandparents last week.

Lesson (2)

18 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The objects found at Nok .... (was) clay sculptures.
2. The area where the Nok people lived .... (were) in Nigeria.
3. Fares .... (be) angry with his brother yesterday.
4. We .... (have) a great time at the carnival last weekend!
5. Jana and Gameela .... (make) pizza for us last night.
6. Nader and Walid .... (be) in my class last year.
7. The archaeologists .... (find) many old sculptures a year ago.

Lesson (3)

19 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Hani didn't .... (went) on the palace tour with the guide.
2. Did your mom .... (made) your dress, Laila?
3. We didn't .... (had) a good meal in that restaurant.
4. In 1275, Marco polo .... (go) into the Gobi Desert for the first time.
5. How big .... (was) the sand dunes in the Gobi Desert?
6. What .... (be) the weather like yesterday?
7. Where .... (be) he when he wrote it?
8. How did you .... (felt)?
9. Jerry just .... (arranges) to send his luggage to Japan last week.
10. On television, they said that in Asia they .... (find) too much treasure to measure.

Lesson (4)

20 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. A felucca .... (be) a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.
2. Where did the writer .... (went)?
3. What did the writer .... (thought) of the great Pyramid?
4. They .... (go) to the desert in 1275.



Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

21 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Let's .... (made) candles.
2. I love .... (make) things.
3. Why don't we .... (to make) something new?
4. These .... (be) little bottles of lemon oil. They smell lovely.
5. What do we .... (needs) to do first?
6. We can .... (took) about 15 flowers and press them on the tops of the candles.

Lesson (2)

22 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ancient Egyptians .... (eat) well.
2. What did families .... (used) to make their cooking taste better?
3. Ancient Egyptians .... (take) care of their bodies.
4. What did Ancient Egyptians .... (ate) and drink?
5. There .... (be) a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt.
6. Ancient Egyptians .... (dry) fish or used salt to preserve it.
7. Ancient Egyptians .... (uses) jars to keep fruit and vegetables.
8. How .... (much) lemons do we need for the lemonade?
9. How .... (many) oil do we need?
10. We need .... (a little) lemons.
11. We need .... (a few) oil.
12. There are .... (any) girls from Luxor in my class.
13. There aren't .... (some) tigers in Egypt.

14 Please hurry. We don't have .... (many) time.

15 Can I have .... (a few) sugar in my coffee, please?

Lesson (3)

23 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Peter is .... (surprising) and looks carefully at the painting again.

2 Peter lives in a big palace .... (which) his parents are the care takers.

3 Peter is .... (astonishing).

4 I'm .... (enjoy) a hot bath now.

5 Why .... (do) Peter live in a palace?

6 The Ancient Egyptians .... (love) strong perfumes.

7 Where does Peter .... (finds) the king?

8 The Ancient Egyptians .... (make) mint candies.

Lesson (4)

24 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 What would you .... (making) with salt dough?

2 .... (Heats) the oven on a low temperature.

3 .... (Adding) a little water, and stir the mixture.

4 .... (Leaves) the item to cool, then paint them.

Lesson (5)

25 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 What do we .... (uses) spices for?

2 Egypt is famous .... (with) its spices.

3 What else can we .... (made) with spices?

Model Answers

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 work 2 go 3 come 4 help 5 who
6 do 7 plant 8 have 9 means 10 on
11 produce 12 have

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 work 2 collect 3 helps 4 have 5 are
6 help 7 are always 8 rains 9 often 10 goes

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 do 2 for 3 on 4 has 5 was
6 stopped 7 is 8 tastes 9 are 10 makes

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 miss 2 are 3 is 4 eat
5 make 6 are 7 have 8 write

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 are 2 has 3 who 4 offer 5 help
6 at 7 to 8 have 9 where 10 help
11 talking 12 should

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 who 2 of 3 where 4 are 5 who
6 which 7 grow 8 who 9 which 10 where
11 which 12 where 13 who 14 which 15 where
16 excited 17 interested 18 exciting 19 interesting 20 surprised

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 lies
2 stops
3 will
4 where
5 feels
6 has
7 needs
8 where

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 say
2 are
3 but
4 which
5 have
6 makes
7 but

9 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 go
2 excited
3 try
4 travel
5 can
6 will
7 climb
8 are
9 explore
10 on

10 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 book
2 have to
3 switches
4 listen
5 melts
6 gets
7 doesn't
8 in
9 at
10 on
11 in
12 on

11 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 think
2 go
3 climb
4 go
5 are
6 happen
7 does
8 was
9 found
10 have
11 has
12 bought

12 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 is
2 exciting
3 do
4 has
5 do
6 like

13 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 go
2 do
3 doing
4 hanging
5 pass
6 are
7 sending
8 many

Model Answers

14 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 live
2 studying
3 on
4 organizing
5 look
6 reading
7 get
8 wearing

15 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 give
2 like
3 gives
4 have
5 invite

16 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 ask
2 writing
3 inviting
4 attend
5 have

17 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 go
2 was
3 did
4 went
5 ago
6 was
7 travel
8 went

18 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 were
2 was
3 was
4 had
5 made
6 were
7 found

19 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 go
2 make
3 have
4 went
5 were
6 was
7 was
8 feel
9 arranged
10 found

20 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 is
2 go
3 think
4 went

21 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 make
2 making
3 make
4 are
5 need
6 take

22 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 ate	2 use	3 took	4 eat	5 were
6 dried	7 used	8 many	9 much	10 a few
11 a little	12 some	13 any	14 much	15 a little

23 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 surprised	2 where	3 astonished	4 enjoying
5 does	6 loved	7 find	8 made

24 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 make	2 Heat	3 Add	4 Leave

25 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 use	2 for	3 make



كيفية طباعة صفحات معينة من ملف معين

مثلا ازاى نطبع الصفحات من صفحة 4 الى صفحة 9



خطوة 1

خطوة 2 اختيار اسم الطابعة بتاعتك

خطوة 3 كتابة الصفحات المراد طباعتها نكتب رقم 4 ثم نكتب الشرطة دي - ثم نكتب 9

خطوة 4 اختيار نوع الورق

خطوة 5 اختيار A4

خطوة 6

المراجعة رقم (2)







Sample Test on Unit 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nour asks Mariam to go to her ....

   a. village b. town c. hotel d. house

2. Mariam goes to help her .... on Fridays.

   a. aunt b. uncle c. father d. mother

3. They work in a community ....

   a. city b. garden c. building d. street

4. The community garden is on the .... of an apartment block.

   a. market b. garden c. roof d. balcony

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The boy is .... He doesn't want his friends to share his toys.

   a. nice b. beautiful c. clever d. selfish

2. The railway line is a road for ....

   a. planes b. ships c. trains d. cars

3. Every year, the farmers .... the crops and sell them to the market.

   a. harvest b. cover c. create d. understand

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

eat - breakfast - weather - honey

I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny (1) .... and especially the food! Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put (2) .... on it, but I don't really like it! I really miss my favorite Egyptian (3) ...., ful medames! The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last year, we visited our uncle in New York. My uncle's apartment is on the seventeenth floor. There are a lot of green spaces in New York. I went to the High Line. The High Line was a railway line, but the trains stopped using it. The High Line is a very **wonderful** place. When you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, eat delicious food or hang out with your friends. There are lots of different restaurants in New York, but I think the food tastes more delicious in Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My uncle's apartment is on the .... floor.
   a. 7th   b. 17th   c. 70th   d. 27th
2. The underlined word "**wonderful**" means ....
   a. boring   b. ugly   c. amazing   d. bad

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What was the High Line ?

....

4. What can you see when you walk through the High Line ?

....

5. Where did they visit their uncle ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. do – What – you – on – do – usually – weekends ?

....

2. always – late – My brother – for – is – work.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. She never .... (eat) unhealthy food.
2. I'm always on time. I'm .... (sometimes) late.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. does your garden produce a lot of vegetables

....

2. how often do you play football

....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words about helping in a community garden to your friend Ali. Your friend's email address is aliahmed@yahoo.com. Your name is Magdy and your email address is magdy@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

- natural fertilizer
- volunteers

From	
To	
Subject	

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test on Unit 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The west court is a large open area in our ....
   a. house b. shop c. school d. block
2. There are .... to sit on under the trees.
   a. tables b. benches c. beds d. rooms
3. Children can grow .... with Mr Mahdi.
   a. plants b. rice c. vegetables d. bees
4. Mr Mahdi is the teacher who helps in the ....
   a. street b. roof c. garden d. apartment

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We do .... at the laboratory.
   a. exercise b. experiments c. sports d. houseworks
2. The hare feels hungry. Her .... makes a loud noise.
   a. brain b. hand c. stomach d. eye
3. There is a nice .... in our town. We enjoy seeing water shows.
   a. spaceship b. laboratory
   c. court d. water fountain

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

planet – return – popular - make

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series. It is (1) .... with people of all age groups. It is interesting. It also takes place in the future on a (2) .... called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the Earth is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey. Frey wants to (3) .... to Earth to look for his family.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they are the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals

which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about "...................... ".

a. Lions b. Elephants c. Dogs d. Cats

2. Cats are clean and .... animals.

a. ugly b. messy c. calm d. nervous

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What are the writer's favorite animals ?

....

4. When do cats use their sharp claws and teeth ?

....

5. Cats are good for our well-being. Explain.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the mechanic – Ali – fixes - who - is - buses.

....

2. and – field – There is – playing – a playground.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My school is the place .... (who) my mom works.
2. It's a very .... (excited) program. I'll watch it again.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. the laboratories have all the equipment

....

2. ali shows respect to everyone

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

Your first day at school

Guiding elements : classroom - at break

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test on Unit 3



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Eyad visits his grandparents in ....
   a. October b. June c. May d. July
2. Eyad goes .... with his grandpa.
   a. swimming b. running c. fishing d. walking
3. Eyad meets his .... in the evenings.
   a. friends b. father c. brothers d. parents
4. Eyad sometimes helps his .... in the kitchen.
   a. father b. sister c. friends d. grandma

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She is trying to .... her fear of heights.
   a. face b. hunt c. want d. reach
2. My uncle likes to .... new places, so he always travels to many countries.
   a. ask b. explore c. write d. take
3. Let's go to the theme park and ride on a ....
   a. minaret b. palace c. rollercoaster d. camel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

brains – concentrate – have - list

If you want to study hard, you should follow these tips. Study for about 30 minutes, but no longer. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't [1] .... When you [2] .... regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's [3] .... work better if they have a regular routine.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sara's favorite cousin Noha comes to visit her. It is Noha's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the **famous** places. Noha

shows Sara a photo and tells her that they can visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa and they can also climb up the hill to it. There's a great view from there!

Sara doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Noha happy, but she has a secret, she is afraid of heights. Sara doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says, "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sara decides to face her ....
   a. cousin b. fear c. parents d. teacher
2. The underlined word "**famous**" has the same meaning as ".................".
   a. busy b. tidy c. popular d. small

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Sara live ?

....

4. What is Sara's secret ?

....

5. What does Noha show Sara ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can – at – shows – You – watch – the theater.

....

2. rides – loves – My – waterfalls – brother.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If you .... (doesn't) have a pen, you can tell me.
2. I got many presents .... (at) my birthday.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. my mom loves museums

....

2. where will the guide meet us.

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

A trip to Cairo

Guiding elements :

- activities
- explore

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test on Unit 4



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Next week is our school's Mother's Day ....
   a. celebration   b. information   c. population   d. pollution
2. We're inviting the families of the ....
   a. workers   b. teachers   c. students   d. doctors
3. We're .... a special day for the event.
   a. exploring   b. organizing   c. shouting   d. adapting
4. We're inviting people from the .... community.
   a. national   b. international   c. local   d. global

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My daughter is a slow .... She takes four weeks to finish reading a story.
   a. writer   b. driver   c. reader   d. robot
2. .... is the air that comes out of your mouth.
   a. View   b. Breath   c. Tradition   d. Dust
3. Omar uses his .... to cut paper.
   a. streamers   b. strings   c. scissors   d. pencils

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

family – presents – birthday - tall

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make [1] .... cakes for our children. We put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with our [2] .... and friends. The children usually get [3] .... , too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister's birthday. We are all happy and busy, too. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister's party. I use the scissors to cut the string. My brother is blowing up some balloons. They're bright and colorful. We need to hang up these balloons, too.

My mom made a nice cake for my sister. Dalia and Noha are my friends. Now, they are decorating the birthday cake. We have 10 candles for the cake to show my sister's age. My father sent the invitations to our friends. We are all very excited!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about "My sister's ....".
   a. school b. birthday c. friends d. balloons
2. The balloons are .... and colorful.
   a. ugly b. black c. bright d. dark

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who sent the invitations ?

....

4. What is the writer doing ?

....

5. What are Dalia and Noha doing ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. studying – their exams – for – They – are.

....

2. blow up – Can – balloons – you – some ?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Are they........................ (organize) a party ?
2. He is .... (sings) at the concert at the moment.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. who is going to make a playlist

....

2. they are cycling in the park

....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Amr about how you spend your free time. Your name is Maged and your email address is maged@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is amr@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

- get outside
- reading

From	
To	
Subject	

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test on Unit 5



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Local people found some unusual objects under the ....

   a. water   b. river   c. ground   d. wood

2. These objects were beautiful .... sculptures.

   a. clay   b. metal   c. plastic   d. glass

3. The sculptures were all in the same ....

   a. age   b. height   c. personality   d. style

4. The sculptures were in a sitting position with their .... on their legs.

   a. hands   b. feet   c. fingers   d. noses

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An .... is a group of camels and people traveling together.

   a. oasis   b. cave   c. caravan   d. valley

2. They don't know anything about this culture. It's a ....

   a. mystery   b. story   c. file   d. project

3. The village was quiet and .... I could sleep well there.

   a. nervous   b. scary   c. peaceful   d. noisy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

run - dry - fascinated - wind

Marco Polo was twenty-one when he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was (1) .... by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long. Their shapes were always changing. The (2) .... made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the (3) .... sea" in their language.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Today, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the **warm** sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.

We stopped to see some incredible things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome! The Pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A felucca is made of ....
   a. metal b. plastic c. wood d. paper
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**warm**" is ".................. ".
   a. brave b. fast c. mysterious d. cold

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the felucca?

....

4. Describe the captain of the boat.

....

5. How long is the Great Pyramid?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. many – Archaeologists – in – found – the area – sculptures.

....

2. were – What – like – dromedaries – the?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. We .... (have) a great time at the carnival last month.
2. .... (Does) she travel to Paris last winter ?

7 Punctuate the following.

1. the sculptures had complicated hair styles

....

2. i had a delicious lunch yesterday

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

The Gobi Desert

Guiding elements :

• sand dunes • dry

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test on Unit 6



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Peter lives in a big ....

   a. house   b. palace   c. country   d. village

2. His parents are the ....

   a. nurses   b. servants   c. caretakers   d. doctors

3. Peter likes to .... the rooms.

   a. knock   b. damage   c. spend   d. explore

4. The rooms are full of interesting and .... things.

   a. precious   b. funny   c. strange   d. messy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The farmers raise birds like .... and ducks.

   a. goats   b. geese   c. cows   d. sheep

2. Tourists buy Egyptian .... as a present for their families.

   a. secrets   b. products   c. traditions   d. habits

3. They use salt to .... fish for a long time.

   a. preserve   b. book   c. read   d. grow

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

garlic - paintings – floods – bread

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. In Ancient Egypt, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile (1) .... Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, (2) ...., lentils, and beans and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley. People used this to make (3) .... and they ate a lot of this every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was **expensive** because it had a lot of ingredients, some

of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "...................... in Ancient Egypt".
   a. festivals b. perfumes c. boats d. plants
2. The underlined word "**expensive**" is the opposite of "......................" .
   a. difficult b. precious c. common d. cheap

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did the Ancient Egyptians love ?

....

4. What was the most popular perfume called ?

....

5. What can you see in Ancient Egyptian paintings ?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. sticks – We – some – need – popsicle.

....

2. a strong – plants – Herbs – with – are – taste.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Is there .... [some] salt in the kitchen ?
2. There .... [are] some rice on the plate.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. how much wax do we need

....

2. we make bread from wheat

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements :

Personal care in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements :

- perfumes
- candies

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening Texts

Sample Tests on Units

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Sample Test on Unit 1 :

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house, but Mariam goes to help her aunt on Fridays. They work in a community garden. The community garden is on the roof of an apartment block.

Sample Test on Unit 2 :

The west court is a large open area in our school. There is a playground and playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

Sample Test on Unit 3 :

In July, Eyad visits his grandparents. He stays with them in their house near the beach. He goes fishing in the mornings with his grandpa. In the evenings, he meets his friends and they play football or ride their bikes. Eyad sometimes helps his grandma in the kitchen. Eyad is kind and helpful.

Sample Test on Unit 4 :

Next week is our school's Mother's Day celebration. We're inviting all the teachers and the families of the students. We are organizing a special day for the event. We are inviting people from the local community who often help our school.

Sample Test on Unit 5 :

Many years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs.

Sample Test on Unit 6 :

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things - old paintings, statues, carpets and furniture.

Sample Tests

Sample test 1 :

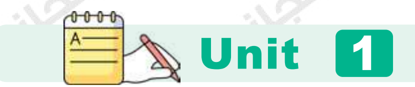
Basel and Hazem are friends. Today, they are excited. They're going to go quad biking in the desert. Then they're going to the theme park in Giza City. They want to ride on a rollercoaster in the theme park. That sounds amazing.

Sample test 2 :

Marco Polo is an Italian explorer and a writer. He is one of the first people from the west to visit China. He went to China in the 13^{th} century. He wrote a diary about his experiences. The diary is called The Travels of Marco Polo.



Important Topics



Unit 1

"A community roof garden"

I'm Reem. I like to help my family at the community garden. It's a green space on the roof of our apartment block. We have volunteers from the neighborhood. We plant vegetables like peppers, onions, lettuce and carrots. We also plant fruit trees. We only use natural fertilizer to have fresh, organic food. We can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. That's great !

"My neighborhood"

From : magdy@yahoo.com
To : aliahmed@yahoo.com
Subject : My neighborhood

Hi Ali,

How are you ? My neighborhood is great. Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city. We have a lot of green spaces in our neighborhood. There are also a lot of projects to create parks and green areas. In my neighborhood, there are nice restaurants. There is also a sports club where we can do sports. We all help each other to keep our neighborhood clean and great.

Yours,

Magdy

"The new city you moved to"

From : roqia@gmail.com
To : rana@yahoo.com
Subject : The new city I moved to

Hi Rana,

How are you ? I'm well and the new city I moved to is great. I live in Scotland with Mom, Dad and my brother. Scotland is really interesting. Our apartment is in the city center. It's next to a park called the Meadows. It's on the third floor. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends. I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt. Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better ! The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school.

Yours,

Roqia

"What you miss in Egypt when you travel"

From : faresman@gmail.com
To : zuhairemad@gmail.com
Subject : What I miss in Egypt when I travel

Dear Zuhair,

How are things with you ? The new city is really great, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt. I miss the warm, sunny weather in Egypt. The weather here is very cold all the time. I don't have a lot of friends here. My friends in Egypt are very friendly. I miss them too much. Food here is OK, but Egyptian food is better. Restaurants in Egypt make very delicious food. I miss the places we used to visit in Egypt : the museums, the parks and clubs.

Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.

Lots of love,

Fares



Unit 2

"Your school"

My school is very big and amazing. There are many buildings in it. There is a new laboratory in our school. We can study science there. In the laboratory, there is equipment which we need to do experiments. Our school playground is a large open area. There are benches to sit on under the trees. We have a nice garden in our school. We grow plants in it. We have many laptops and tablets in our computer classrooms. This can help many students study easily.

"Your pet"

There are a lot of animals which we can keep as a pet. Cats are my favorite animals. Cats are beautiful. They have soft fur which is nice to touch. I like cats because they are clean and calm. Cats are independent. You don't need to take them for a walk every day. Cats have sharp claws and teeth. They only use them when they are scared. I like petting cats because this makes me happy.

"My friend at school"

From : hazem20@gmail.com
To : seifbadr@gmail.com
Subject : My friend at school

Dear Seif,

How are you ? I'd like to tell you about my friend at school. On my first day at school, I was very worried and nervous. I met Ahmed. He is my friend. He helped me a lot for the first week. He helped me get to know the school. He took me around, showed me my classrooms and stayed with me at break. He is very clever and he is good at math.

Write soon and tell me your news,
Hazem



Unit 3

"A trip to Cairo"

I love visiting new places on my vacation. I need to try some activities for the trip. There are lots of things to do in Cairo. I can visit the Manial Palace Museum with my friends. It's interesting. We can take photos there. We shouldn't forget to explore the Souks. We can climb the Bab Zuweila minaret. We'll have great fun !

"A place in Egypt"

Egypt is a very great country. I'm proud to be Egyptian. There are many interesting places to visit in Egypt.

The Dome of Abu Al-Hawa is a very interesting place to visit. You can climb up to the hill to the dome. There's a great view from there. It's very famous for watching the sunset from there. Many tourists like to visit this place. I feel proud to live in such a fantastic place !

"Sharm El-Sheikh"

Sharm El-Sheikh
Monday March 3rd

Today, I'm in Sharm El-Sheikh. Sharm El-Sheikh is an amazing place for holiday. It's an interesting and busy town by the Red Sea. Sharm El-Sheikh is my favorite holiday destination because there are lots of things to see and do there. I can go quad biking with my sister in the desert. In the morning, we relaxed on the beach. Yesterday, I visited St Catherine's monastery. It's a wonderful day.

"At the Carnival"

Sunday May 1st
At the Carnival

When I arrive at the park, I'm suddenly in a world of fantasy - it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster. There are also theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too. My brother loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those. We have tickets for the Waterfalls ride. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary and you get very wet!



Unit 4

"A birthday party"

Tomorrow is my sister's birthday. We are getting ready for the party. I'm hanging up the streamers. I'm tying them together so I need my scissors to cut the string. My mom is decorating the birthday cake. She has candles for it. My brother is sending the email invitations. My cousins are blowing up some colorful balloons. My aunt is making a music playlist for the party. My sister loves the fireworks. My dad will let off the fireworks tomorrow.

"Spending my free time"

From : berooo@yahoo.com
To : adeldan@yahoo.com
Subject : Spending my free time

Dear Adel,

How are things ? I'd like to tell you about my free time. I don't have much free time because I'm studying for my exams. There are a lot of activities I like doing in my free time. I like getting outside. I go running every morning in the park. I also cycle on the weekends with my dad. I like meeting my friends in my free time. Reading is my favorite hobby but I'm a slow reader. I love history books, so I can spend my free time reading about history.

Write soon and tell me your news.

Bahgat

"Birthday parties"

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The guests come and bring presents with them. We decorate cakes and play the playlist to sing and dance together.

"Mother's Day Celebration in my school"

From : salahgroup@gmail.com
To : mrayman@yahoo.com
Subject : Mother's Day Celebration in my school

Dear Mr Ayman,

I'm writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for this celebration on Sunday March 21 [details below]. We are inviting students, teachers and parents.

We very much hope you can attend.

Date : Sunday March 21

Time : 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm

Location : School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above

Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Salah Ali

"Birthdays around the world"

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. Children everywhere like party food. Birthday parties often include small cakes, sandwiches and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. In Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family. In China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthday.



Unit 5

"Marco Polo"

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He was one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went to China in the 13th century. He wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called "The Travels of Marco Polo". It was a very difficult journey to China. The journey took years. He sailed by ship on a long journey. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China.

"The Gobi Desert"

The Gobi Desert has a very hot dry weather. There are many sand dunes. Some of the dunes are sixty meters tall and twenty meters long. The dunes shapes are always changing. The wind makes the sand dunes move and roll like huge yellow waves. The local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

" An amazing trip"

6 January

Today, I had an amazing trip. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A felucca is difficult to sail, but the captain was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was wonderful. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board the felucca. I really had a very nice time.

"A famous traveler in the past"

Marco Polo was a famous traveler who traveled to many places. He was one of the first people from the West who visited China. He wrote his diary "The Travels of Marco Polo". When he was twenty-one, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He saw the sand dunes which were amazing. It was a mysterious and dangerous place. Marco Polo Museum had a lot of things from ancient China.



Unit 6

"Making candles"

It's not difficult to make candles. There are some instructions for making candles. First, we need some wax. Palm wax from Egyptian palm trees makes really nice candles. We need some perfume oil. To make three candles, we squeeze in about 40 drops of the perfume oil. We can press some flowers on the tops of the candles. We need one glass for each candle and one wick. We need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

"Food in Ancient Egypt"

Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and ate well. Ancient Egyptians ate a lot of vegetables and fruits. They used wheat and barley to make bread. Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat. They probably ate a few fish and birds. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or geese. They used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks. Some families used spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better.

"Personal care in Ancient Egypt"

Ancient Egyptians used many of the products we use today for personal care. They used perfumes and toothpaste. Some perfumes in Ancient Egypt were made from flowers, herbs and some types of minerals. They mixed these flowers and herbs with oil to make a cream. The Ancient Egyptians made mint candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.

"Egyptian flavors"

Egypt is famous for its spices. Spices are used in home cooking and restaurants. We use spices to cook food. We also use spices to make perfume and medicine. People can also buy spices from souks. Tourists buy beautifully packaged spices as souvenirs when they visit Egypt.

مجانا وحصريا

حمل الآن

المراجعة رقم (3)









First term Questions Bank





Question 01 Listen and circle the correct answer

1

Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 - It was.........................because it had a lot of ingredients.
(expensive - medium – difficult – cheap)
2. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong....................
(army - spices -recipes – perfumes)
3. The most popular perfume was called.............
(captain -kasper- capine – kapet)
4. Some of ingredients were...............to find.
(easy- less - difficult – little)

2

Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 - Marco Polo is an Italian.............and a writer.
(archaeologist - architect- explorer- engineer)
2 - He went to China in the 13th..............
(month – day- week – Century)
3 - He wrote a diary about his..............
(voyages- trips – camels- experiences)
4 - his..............is called the travels of Marco Polo
(ship – diary- record – adventure)

3

Listen and circle the correct answer

1 - Lara is...............She worries about talking to people.
(shy - excited – messy- tidy)
2 - Lyly is very clever. She's very...............at school work.
(bad – terrible- awful- good)
3 - Seif is very.............He speaks carefully and correctly.
(polite - rude- annoying- naughty)
4 - Maged is friendly. He's..............to others and helpful.
(impolite -nice- unpleasant- disrespectful)



Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 - Seif is in primary.............(four – five - six - three)
2 - He wants to go to the..............(zoo - library - school - park)
3 - The library is on the.................floor.
(second - first - third - fourth)
4 - He is going to read some books about famous...........
(people- seas - foods - places)



Listen and circle the correct answer

1 The Pyramids are in................
(Giza – Cairo- Alexandria – Aswan)
2 - The Pyramids were.............. and the stones were a sort of golden color.
(small – tiny – little - **huge**)
3 - The Great Pyramid is the.............of the three pyramids.
(tallest - **biggest** - shortest – smallest)
4 - The Great Pyramid is..........meters high.
(174- **147** – 142- 144)



Listen and circle the correct answer

1 - Ancient Egyptians took care of their.................and ate very well.
(hair - **bodies** - pets - homes)
2 - They ate a lot of.................
(meat - sweets - **bread** - rice)
3 - They ate..........from cows and goats.
(**cheese** - honey - milk – tea)
4 - They used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit...................
(cakes - **drinks** - water – coffee)



Listen and circle the correct answer

1 - Local people found some unusual objects under the............
(water – river - **ground** - wood)

2 - These objects were beautiful.............. sculptures.

(**Clay** - metal - plastic - glass)

3 - The sculptures were all in the same...............
(age - height - personality - **style**)

4 - The sculptures were in a sitting position with their................on their legs .
(**hands** - feet – fingers- noses)

8

Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 - Little Deer runs through the...............
(park- zoo- river- forest)
2 - He comes to a beautiful.............lake.
(yellow - blue - red - green)
3 - Little Deer sees a...............
(duck - dog - wolf – cat)
4 - The wolf wants to..................Little Deer.
(eat - drink - help - meet)

Question 02 **choose the correct answer**

1. She................to the library last week.
   (a) went (b) going (c) go (d) goes
2. He.........very happy yesterday.
   (a) was (b) were (c) is (d) has
3. They.................a lot of homework.
   (a) has (b) had (c) was (d) is
4. The archaeologists........many old tools last year.
   (a) find (b) don't find (c) finds (d) found
5. Did you................. cake for the birthday yesterday?
   (a) made (b) make (c) making (d) makes
6. They..............at the cinema last night.
   (a) are (b) is (c) was (d) were
7. We...............win the match last week.
   (a) didn't (b) don't (c) weren't (d) wasn't
9. We...............a great time at the party yesterday.
   (a) having (b) have (c) has (d) had
10. ....you at the museum last week?
   (a) Did (b) Will (c) Were (d) Is

11. What did they...........about the accident?
    (a) wrote (b) writing (c) write (d) writes
12. The farmer used the farming.......to cut the dead tree.
    (a) spoons (b) tools (c) paper (d) water
13. There are a lot of...............in the desert.
    (a) oceans (b) rivers (c) seas (d) sand dunes
14. We are................by the wonderful view of the Nile.
    (a) empty (b) different (c) exhausted (d) fascinated
15. They went towards the empty............of the desert.
    (a) ocean (b) wasteland (c) farm (d) river
16. He................music in the party yesterday.
    (a) playing (b) play (c) plays (d) played

We went on a trip in the.....................sunshine.

17. (a) metal (b) warm (c) plastic (d) cold

Koshari is a/an................Egyptian meal.

18. (a) international (b) traditional (c) weak (d) modern

. They don't know anything about this culture. It's a...........

19. (a) mystery (b) file (c) story (d) project

Did you..................the Pyramids.?

20. (a) are visiting (b) visit (c) visiting (d) visits

To...............means to move from side to side.

21. (a) ask (b) dream (c) sway (d) explore

He cut the...........of the flowers to use it.

22. (a) petals (b) ropes (c) drops (d) hands

A wick is a little cotton.............inside the candle

23. (a) stick (b) drop (c) tree (d) rope

How............... milk do you want in your coffee?

24. (a) much (b) many (c) high (d) often

How many...............are there in the kitchen?

25 ⓐ sugar ⓑ oil ⓒ water ⓓ spoons

Are there..................tigers in Egypt?

26 ⓐ much ⓑ some ⓒ a little ⓓ any

There is................ of traffic.

27 ⓐ a lot ⓑ a few ⓒ many ⓓ any

We have...............figs in the fridge.

28 ⓐ a little ⓑ lot ⓒ a few ⓓ any

.....................stores are there in the mall?

ⓐ How much ⓑ How long ⓒ How often ⓓ How many

29 I can't find...............pens in my bag.

ⓐ some ⓑ a lot ⓒ any ⓓ an

30 I'm............forward to the party to see my friends.

ⓐ cycling ⓑ putting ⓒ looking ⓓ making

31 I am a slow..................I take four weeks to finish reading a book.

ⓐ writer ⓑ robot ⓒ driver ⓓ reader

32 Are........ listening to music?

ⓐ I ⓑ she ⓒ he ⓓ they

33 He.............playing games at the moment.

ⓐ not ⓑ don't ⓒ isn't ⓓ have

34 I'm.................a birthday party today.

ⓐ have ⓑ had ⓒ has ⓓ having

35 Why........ they running fast?

ⓐ do ⓑ will ⓒ have ⓓ are

36 ....is the air that comes out of your mouth.

ⓐ View ⓑ Sound ⓒ Tradition ⓓ Breath

37 Please, call me to..............if you can come or not.

ⓐ confirm ⓑ sail ⓒ forget ⓓ hope

38. Today, we..................to the theater to watch a play.
   (a) goes (b) going (c) are going (d) to go

39. No, he isn't........................... is at the school.
   (a) sleeping (b) sleep (c) slept (d) sleeps

40. When...........they coming?
   (a) are (b) do (c) had (d) will

41. We need an adult to let off the..................in the sky.
   (a) candles (b) fireworks (c) cakes (d) fans

42. He blew out the............. with one breath.
   (a) candy (b) candle (c) camel (d) carpet

43. ....are a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water and eggs.
   (a) Presents (b) Fish (c) Peaches (d) Noodles

44. They were................when they found the museum empty.
   (a) heavy (b) closed (c) astonished (d) difficult

47. This royal ring is................... It costs a lot of money.
   (a) precious (b) cheap (c) weak (d) broken

48. How.............water does the plant need?
   (a) long (b) many (c) often (d) much

49. Can I have.....................fresh grapes?
   (a) little (b) some (c) much (d) a lot

50. ....there any toothpaste in the tube?
   (a) Are (b) Have (c) Were (d) Is

51. cats have...................claws and teeth
   (a) blunt (b) sharp (c) cold (d) k

52. We went to the park,..........it was closed.
   (a) because (b) but (c) or (d) for

53. my new school is great ,................it's far from my house
   (a) as (b) so (c) but (d) and

54. There's someone here, I can hear his............

ⓐ clothes ⓑ voice ⓒ books ⓓ face

55. I'm ....in ancient Egypt.

ⓐ interest ⓑ interested ⓒ interesting ⓓ interests

56. She helps in a local school as a.................three days a week

ⓐ volunteer ⓑ space ⓒ neighborhood ⓓ community

57. I live in an....................in the city with my family.

ⓐ tent ⓑ apartment block ⓒ cave ⓓ factory

58. I have a new car.........helps me go to work faster.

ⓐ where ⓑ when ⓒ who ⓓ which

59. He...........eats rice because he doesn't like it

ⓐ rarely ⓑ always ⓒ don't ⓓ usually

60. Let's.............. to the beach with our friends

ⓐ goes ⓑ went ⓒ go ⓓ going

61. How..........do you study English? Three times a week

ⓐ much ⓑ many ⓒ long ⓓ often

62. There are many different............of bees

ⓐ species ⓑ residents ⓒ pens ⓓ branche

63. When we have free time, we can just.............out and have a good time.

ⓐ miss ⓑ hang ⓒ pass ⓓ taste

64. We sometimes...........cycling on holidays

ⓐ goes ⓑ going ⓒ gone ⓓ go

65. My friend Amr is intelligent, he is good at maths, he is...............

ⓐ messy ⓑ bad ⓒ clever ⓓ ugly

66. The weather.........Sunny in Egypt in summer.

ⓐ is usually ⓑ always is ⓒ never is ⓓ usually is

67. How often..................Noha visit her grandparents?

ⓐ is ⓑ do ⓒ does ⓓ has

68. Egypt is creating a new..............line for the train station.
   - (a) airport (b) ferry (c) railway (d) pool

69. Hany..................drinks cola. He likes healthy drinks
   - (a) doesn't (b) isn't (c) never (d) always

70. Hani usually...............to school by bus
   - (a) go (b) don't (c) goes (d) going

71. She doesn't like to talk to strange people because she is............
   - (a) nervous (b) tidy (c) clever (d) shy

72. I.................my cousins every week
   - (a) visit (b) visits (c) visiting (d) doesn't visit

73. Come.........Nada. I'll show you where the classroom is.
   - (a) away (b) out (c) on (d) for

74. Farmers use..................to kill insects that eat the crops
   - (a) fertilizers (b) crops (c) chemicals (d) lemons

75. The results of the students last test are............
   - (a) surprise (b) surprised (c) surprises (d) surprising

76. My father is the person.........taught me to ride a bike.
   - (a) where (b) when (c) who (d) which

77. is Magdy the boy..................lives in your building
   - (a) who (b) where (c) which (d) whose

78. I'm very...............I want to eat
   - (a) angry (b) hungry (c) nervous (d) worried

79. My little sister is afraid............the dark.
   - (a) next (b) out (c) of (d) in

80. When I forget my book at school, I can................my friend's book.
   - (a) eat (b) share (c) sure (d) help

81. He tells me funny stories. He makes me...........
   - (a) laugh (b) angry (c) sorry (d) cry

82. We play basketball in the...............
   - (a) laboratory (b) fountain (c) pool (d) gymnasium
83. What is the best animal to keep as a.............at home?
   - (a) giant (b) pet (c) play (d) ball
84. I really love the red flowers ....grow in our garden
   - (a) who (b) which (c) where (d) when
85. An ostrich is a big bird..................can't fly
   - (a) which (b) where (c) whose (d) whose
86. ....is good for the soil
   - (a) Papyrus (b) Natural fertilizer (c) Butter (d) Cheese
87. Cats make the best ....
   - (a) bats (b) pets (c) hats (d) k
88. They want to ride on a.............
   - (a) rollercoaster (b) camel (c) horse (d) bus
89. This ancient mosque has a very high.....
   - (a) mountain (b) minaret (c) cinema (d) company
90. He blew out the....................with one breath.
   - (a) candy (b) carpet (c) camel (d) candle
91. My uncle likes to.............new places, so he always travels to many countries.
   - (a) ask (b) explore (c) write (d) take
92. I'm...........forward to the party to see my friends.
   - (a) cycling (b) looking (c) putting (d) making
93. . When she..................... much cake, she gets a stomach ache.
   - (a) eats (b) ate (c) eaten (d) eating
94. It's helpful if you...........down what you want to do.
   - (a) write (b) writes (c) writing (d) written
95. My dad...............the match now
   - (a) watches (b) watched (c) watch (d) is watching

96. She suddenly fell in a............and got her clothes wet.
ⓐ glass ⓑ puddle ⓒ minaret ⓓ height

97. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim...........spring
ⓐ by ⓑ in ⓒ at ⓓ on

98. We go to Hurghada...........summer every year.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ to

99. You can go..........biking in the desert.
ⓐ quad ⓑ cycling ⓒ quick ⓓ swim

100. Noha is..................of heights, she can't climb the minaret.
ⓐ afraid ⓑ excited ⓒ proud ⓓ sure

101. He gets up .... seven o'clock
ⓐ in ⓑ of ⓒ on ⓓ at

102. When the clouds are red, it............there's dust in the sky
ⓐ meant ⓑ mean ⓒ meaning ⓓ means

103. If you don't know a word, you can...................it up in a dictionary.
ⓐ looks ⓑ looked ⓒ looking ⓓ look

104. There're many rides to try in the.........
ⓐ minaret ⓑ theme park ⓒ library ⓓ museum

105. Hana is sending the..............
ⓐ balloons ⓑ fireworks ⓒ playlist ⓓ invitations

106. Mazen will hang up the............
ⓐ playlist ⓑ birthday cake ⓒ streamers ⓓ invitations

107. Please,.................me if you need help.
ⓐ calling ⓑ calls ⓒ called ⓓ call

108. I was born...................April 17th 2012
ⓐ at ⓑ on ⓒ in ⓓ of

109. What is your brother........... at the moment?
ⓐ do ⓑ doing ⓒ did ⓓ does

110. Are..........listening to music?
   a) I b) she c) they d) he

111. She...........helping her mother.
   a) don't b) isn't c) doesn't d) aren't

112. They're going to go quad biking in the........
   a) river b) sea c) desert d) lake

113. Look! He is.................. after his dog.
   a) run b) runs c) running d) ran

114. How can you make pizza if you...........know the recipe?
   a) aren't b) don't c) didn't d) couldn't

115. Can you.............up the balloons?
   a) send b) blow c) write d) cut

116. We need an adult to............off the fireworks.
   a) decorate b) send c) make d) let

117. We need scissors to cut the.................
   a) song b) spring c) ring d) string

118. They're riding...............the rollercoaster. It's amazing!
   a) next b) between c) on d) in

119. We are buying the decoration..................
   a) yesterday b) usually c) often d) today

Question 03 — Read and complete the text with the words in the box

1

(brains-longer-concentrate - have - forget)

If you want to study hard, you should follow these tips. Study for about 30 minutes but no .... if you try to study for hours without a break, you can't .... When you .... regular breaks that help you more. It's also better to study at the same time each day even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's .... work better if they have a regular routine.

2

(tray-eat- temperature - stir – flat)

This is salt dough recipe. Heat the oven on a low .... mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, ... the mixture until it starts to form a ball. Put the ball of dough on a .... surface and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out into numbers or letters. Put your finished items on a baking .... and bake in the oven for 3 hours.

3

(helpful - neighborhood - clean - weekends - eat)

Ahmed and Ayman are friends. On the .... they visit. Ahmed's grandfather. They help to .... the street and water the trees in the .... there .are many volunteers. They are very .... they sometimes grow more new trees.

4

(family-presents-birthday-language - candles)

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make .... cakes for our children. We put .... on them to show their age. We often have parties with our .... and friends. The children usually get .... too.

5

(geese - eggs - Ancient - cheese – festivals)

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! Most people in .... Egypt only ate a little meat. They usually eat meat at .... They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks , ... and chickens. They also ate some eggs and .... from cows or goats.

6

(wildlife - green - areas- urban)

Mini forest is an organization. It plants small .... of trees in the middle of our cities. These special .... areas help people enjoy nature. People who work in this organization always work hard to find the best .... location for our forests where people and .... need nature most.



(fantasy-shows-rollercoaster - matches - surprise)

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday .... at the carnival! It's an amazing place. When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of .... it's exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the .... and theatres where you can watch .... There are places to eat and stores, too.

8

(fountain-fields - area - benches - break)

This is the West Court. It is a large open .... where students have .... There is a playground and playing field .There are also .... to sit on under the trees and a water .... if you feel thirsty. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden

9

(dry - fascinated - dunes - wind – move)

Marco Polo was twenty-one when he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time he was.................... by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the .... were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long. Their shapes were always changing. The .... made them move and roll like huge yellow waves.In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the .... sea".in their language.



(water vegetables - clean - sell – community)

Ahmed and Mahmoud work in a community garden on the roof of an apartment block. They grow .... and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they .... them too. Ahmed and Mahmoud think the .... is a good idea because the plants help to .... the air in the city.



(breaks up-concentrate - down)

We should study for about thirty minutes. We can't .... if we study for hours. We work more when we have regular .... It's good to write .... what you want to do in each time in your study. You should also eat a healthy meal at lunchtime.



(soft - walk- friendly – eat - pets)

Cats are my favourite animals and I think they make the best .... They are beautiful, with .... fur which is nice to touch . They are clean and calm animals and are usually .... They like people, but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a .... every day.



(shows-happy- polite - bad – school)

Esraa is a new student at our school. She is very .... and clever. Radwa is Esraa's new friend who helps her get to know the .... Radwa takes Esraa around and .... her where their classrooms are. Esraa is very ....



(family-presents-birthday-language – candles)

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make .... cakes for our children. We put .... on them to show their age. We often have parties with our .... and friends. The children usually get .... too



(humans - archaeologists - information - advanced-tools)

The area where the Nok people lived was in Nigeria. People found sculptures in this area, and .... went there to study them. The Nok culture was .... and its people made sculptures from clay, and other farming .... from iron and stone. Their sculptures were usually of .... These sculptures were beautifully made and had large eyes and hair styles.

Question 04 | Read the text and answer the questions



To be healthy, our bodies need food like meat, rice, fruit and vegetables. We need a healthy diet to give us energy. When we do sports, our bodies use more energy and more food. Watching TV doesn't need many quantities of energy. Eating a healthy diet and doing sports are important. People of all ages should do sports to be fit.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. To be..............our bodies need food like meat, rice, fruit and vegetables.
(fit - weak - fat – healthy)
2 - Watching TV needs............energy than doing sports.
(less - big - large – more)
3 - The underlined word "healthy" is opposite of............
(unhealthy - untidy - unhappy - important)

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does a healthy diet give us?

5. What should people of all ages do to be fit?



Dear Mr Ahmed,
I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday, March 21. As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We hope you can attend
Date: Sunday, March 21
Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm
Location: School Hall
RSVP in writing to the email address above Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.
Yours sincerely,
Randa Gamal

A - Choose the correct answer :

1. The main idea of the text is about a/an...................
(school's teachers - school uniform - school's Mother's Day celebration - school project)

2. The underlined word " attend" means to.................
(leave- come - talk - hop)

3. The celebration will be at the.

(school library - school garden- school hall - school laboratory)

B. Answer the following questions.

4. How long is the celebration?

5. When is the event?



In a village, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The <u>lovely</u> garden always makes the children happy. But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away.

A - Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "lovely" means "................
(ugly - beautiful - noisy – hard)

2. The giant lives in ....
(town - city - tower - village)

3. The giant is.....................
(smart – kind -selfish - poor)

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Why do children like the giant's garden?

....

5. How is the garden now?

....

4

Rana went on a trip with her family to Marco Polo Museum. They went on a big ship. It's on an island called Korcula. It's a very <u>interesting</u> museum all about the travels of Marco Polo. Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. Marco Polo wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called The Travels of Marco Polo. Traveling to China was very difficult. The journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. Marco Polo was a famous.............
(explorer – scientist – doctor – vet)
2. The underlined word "interesting" is the opposite of "..................
(nice- boring - wonderful – great)

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Rana go with her family?

....

4. How long did Marco Polo's journey take?

....

6. Where is Marco Polo Museum?

....

5

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister's birthday. We are all happy and busy, too. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister's party. I use the scissors to cut the string. My brother is blowing up some balloons. They're bright and colorful. We need to hang up these balloons, too. My mom made a nice cake for my sister. Dalia and Noha are my friends. Now, they are decorating the birthday cake. We have 10 candles for the cake to show my sister's age. My father sent the invitations to our friends. We are all very excited!

A-Choose the correct answer

1. This text is about "My sister's..................
(school- birthday- friends -balloons)

2. My sister is.............years old.
(nine - six – ten- fifteen)

3. My.............sent the invitations.
(mom - friends - brother – dad)

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What is the writer doing?

5. Who decorated the birthday cake?



6

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flower ,herbs and some types of menirals then mixed with oil to make a cream Or they pressed the dry ingredients in to a cone shape to make a incense . In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!

A. Choose the correct answer

1 - The main idea of the text is about ....in AncientEgypt
(festivals- perfumes - boats – plant)
2 - the underlined word "expensive "is the opposite of ....
(precious- difficult – common – cheap)
3 - They pressed the dry ingredients of the perfumes into a..............shape
(square - star – cone- Circle)

B - answer the following questions.

4. What was the most popular perfume called?

....

5. What can you see in Ancient Egyptian paintings?

7

Hi Samer,
How are you? I'm well and New York is great! Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city. New York has a lot of green spaces. There are also a lot of projects to create parks and green areas in parts of the city that no one uses now, like the famous High Line. It passes through our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. It's really cool. Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some local residents had an idea to make the old railway into a big, long park. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It's 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance and eat delicious food, or just hang out with your friends there. I think it's my favorite place in New York. "" Wael ""

A - Choose the correct answer

1. The text is mainly about "the............
(water sports – trains - High Line - school day)
2. The underlined phrase "passes through" means.......
(cuts down - goes up - moves between - looks forward)

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can people do in the High Line?

....

4. Does Wael like living on high buildings? Why?

....

Question 05

put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. to surprised - see - you - I'm!

   ....

2. moving-Hare's - Something-house-is-inside.

   ....

3. sixteenth-block-is-on-the-Our-floor-apartment.

   ....

4. with I-my family-went-to-Hurghada.

   ....

5. famous-What-were-for-they?

   ....

6. wind-noises-made-The-strange.

   ....

7. grass-green-turns - brown - The

   ....

9. in-block-Do-live-you-an apartment?

   ....

10. is-A felucca-to-sail - difficult.

    ....

11. friends-I-a lot-have-of-at school

    ....

12. the bravest in - Lions-are-animals- the world

    ....

13. garden-have-a-They-wonderful.

    ....

14. many-Archaeologists-in-found - the area - sculptures

    ....

15. How-dunes-are-the-big-sand?

    ....

16. they-the afternoon - What-in-did-do?

....

17. experience-had-a-I-wonderful.

....

18. lives - family - Wael's - a tall - in - building.

....

19. is-city-Our apartment-in-the-center

....

20. Italian-an-Marco-was-explorer- Polo.

....

21. sea- He-a long-went on-by-voyage.

....

22. was-your-vacation- Where- last?

....

23. garden - The community-sounds - idea - an amazing.

....

24. different - a lot of - There-are- restaurants - here.

....

25. New York-very- noisy-is-the time - all.

....

26. flowers-lovely-These - smell.

....

27. in - She - interested - science - is.

....

28. produce-garden-We-a lot of -vegetables - in our.

....

29. English - my school - favorite - subject - is.

....

30. perfume - We can - oil - use - candles - to make.

....

31. Egyptians-care- of their - Ancient-took-bodies.

....

32. .spaces-has- a lot - of- New York - green

....

33. do - study - you - Arabic - Where?

....

34. help-clean- Roof - the air - in - the city-gardens

....

35. do- much - How- money -need- you?

....

36. .are-this-doing-What-you-week?

....

37. .the-cycling - I-weekend-am-on.

....

38. He-a-organizing-is-party.

....

39. shows-everyone - Ali-to-respect

....

40. go meet - Let's- some-friends-my-of.

....

41. modern-We-are-our- proud of - buildings.

....

42. Egyptians-mint-The-made- candies - Ancient.

....

43. shampoo-for-we-What-use-do?

....

44. never-We-for our-use-chemicals - plants.

....

47. the kitchen - There -some- carrots-are-in

....

48. your-vegetables - garden - a lot of - Does - produce?

....

49. have-I-extra-an-book-for you

....

50. a lot of - Does - vegetables - your - produce - garden?

....

51. our-I-food-so-miss- much!

....

52. math - your - is - Who - teacher?

....

53. is - This - a large - area - open.

....

54. you- your books-Do-have-all-yet?

....

55. rains - It - rarely- the Western – Desert - in

....

56. The selfish-anything- doesn't-boy-share

....

57. look-plants-We-after- need to - our

....

58. things-you-How-are-with?

....

59. park - There's-near-a big - river - the

....

60. like -sports - People - the park-at-to do

....

61. our-I-miss-much-food-so!

....

62. often -does-cycling - How-he-go?

....

63. neighborhood-We-a community-have-in our-garden

....

64. sunny-a- It's- day.

....

65. have-I-extra-an-book-for you

....



Question 06

Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets

1. Noha and Gameel .... (make) pizza last night.
2. If he .... (press)the button, the machine works.
3. I went to Alexandria .... (in) the weekend
4. Where did you .... [found] your books?
5. When you buy two T-shirts, you .... (gets) one free.
6. What .... (does) they use to make paper in the past?
7. I .... [visit] my grandparents last week.
8. 1. The children feel .... (boring) when there is nothing to do
9. The boys .... [ride) their bikes now.
10. Mom is .... [get] the food ready.
11. Does your aunt always .... (baking) cakes when you visit her?
12. We don't have .... [some] water,
13. You can .... [calls] me if you need any help.
14. No, I .... [not found) my book yesterday.
15. The weather is very hot .... (on) summer
16. The English exam .... [be] very easy last week.
17. What .... (you can) do if you have free time?
18. This is the room .... (who) I put my clothes
19. If I listen to music, it .... (help) me study
20. Where .... (are)they live? They live in Cairo ?
21. .... (not study) when you're hungry.
22. How often .... (do) Ali do sports?
23. Should we go quad biking .... (at) Tuesday?
24. Ali .... (not go) to the the club everyday
25. How .... (long) do you play video games? Twice a week
26. Are they .... [celebrate] at the park?
27. she .... (eat)unhealthy food
28. My dad always .... (have) a healthy breakfast.
29. Ali is very .... (interesting) in math

30. The film was .... (bored), so I didn't want to watch it again
31. He often .... (reading)magazines in his free time
32. Ahmed is a boy .... (which) plays tennis with me
33. She .... (meets always) up her friends on Saturday.
34. I don't like this story . It's .... (bored)
35. .... [Does) you buy a new dress if you have a party?
36. She studies hard ,so she .... (never) gets a good grade
37. Are you playing tennis today? - Yes, I .... (be)
38. I'm always on time. I'm .... (sometimes) late
39. My friend John lives .... (at) England.
40. Ahmed .... (always) travels to China. He doesn't go there
41. .... (Does) she studying English?
42. Bees are insects .... (where) make honey
43. Ali and Ahmed .... (is) helping their mum.
44. My mom .... (studies] medicine when she was at the
45. Did your mom .... [bought) a new dress for the party?
46. They .... (haven't) enjoying their vacation at the moment.
47. How .... (much) ingredients are in the recipe?
48. Ahmed .... (are) watching TV.
49. Are they .... [watch) a funny movie?
50. This recipe needs .... (any) butter and sugar
51. If you don't have a pen, you can .... (told) me
52. The freezer doesn't work if you ....(not close) the door properly.
53. He .... (doesn't) riding his bike now
54. Did your mom .... [had] a new dress for the party?
55. We are .... [enjoy) our summer holiday.
56. If you .... (tried) to study for hours, you can't concentrate
57. He didn't .... [went] on the vacation with his family.
58. .... (Be) there any children on the trip yesterday?
59. We .... [getting] high marks in the exam yesterday.
60. She uses a .... [few] butter to cook.

61. Are there .... [some] chocolate chip cookies left?
62. .... [Be] he playing football at the moment?
63. Please hurry. We don't have .... [many] time.
64. We need .... (a few) oil
65. Noha and Gameela .... (make) pizza last night.
66. .... (Be) there any children on the trip yesterday?
67. When I was six, I .... [have] a nice bike.
68. They .... (doesn't) live near the park
69. my brother likes dates .He .... (never)eats them
70. We sometimes .... (goes) cycling on holidays
71. This is the boy .... (which) broke the window
72. The laboratory is a place where (who) students study science.
73. it's a very .... (excited) film .i 'll watch it again
74. We .... (doesn't) like tennis
75. .... (Do) they playing football at the moment?
76. My father arrives .... (in) six o'clock every day.
77. What .... [be] you buying?
78. She .... (clean) the house this week.
79. we .... (cycle) today.

Question 07 puntcuate the following

1. i wasn't angry

....

2. chinese people are often older

....

3. We are organizing a special party on friday

....

4. ali is good at math

....

5. how does Noha feel today

....

6. cats are clean and calm animals

....

7. did your parents attend the school's Mother's Day celebration

....

9. how much wax do we need

....

10. i miss my favorite egyptian breakfast.

....

11. we do experiments in the science laboratory

....

12. No they didn't

....

13. what do you grow,eyad

....

14. how often does mazin do exercise

....

15. i don t go to bed late

....

16. this is the ahmed Zewail building

....

17. what's your favorite animal, saleh

....

18. We are organizing a special party on friday

....

19. did your parents attend the school's Mother's Day celebration

....

20. who is going to make a playlist

....

21. chinese people are often older

....

22. my mom loves museums

....

23. I play tennis at 3 o clock

....

24 how can you get to giza

....

25 kareem is a clever boy

....

26 what is sally doing

....

Question 08 — **write a paragraph of FIFTY words using the following guide elements**

1

Write a paragraph of about (40-50) words using the following

(Birthdays around the world)

(food - cakes)

....
....
....

2

Write an email of about fifty (50) words about your neighborhood to your friend Ali. Your friend's email address is aliahmed@yahoo.com. Your name is Magdy and your email address is magdy@yahoo.com.
Guiding elements:
What do you like about your neighborhood?
What can you do there?
To...........
From.............
Subject

....
....
....

3

Write a paragraph of about (50-60) words using the following

"Your pet"

(independent - scared - claws - fur)

....
....
....



Write a blog post of about [50] words using the following guiding elements.

Your name is Mahmoud .

(Sharm El-Sheikh)

Where is the place?
Who is with you?
Why do you like it?
What can you do there?

....
....
....

5

Write an email of about (50-60] words to your friend Adel about how you spend your free time. Your name is Bahgat and your email address is berooo@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is adeldan@yahoo.com.
Guiding elements: (get outside - reading - go running – cycle)

....
....
....

6

(The Gobi Desert)

Guiding elements: (sand dunes - wind – dry- local people)

....
....
....

7

Write a paragraph of about (50-60) words using the following :

"" personal care in Ancient Egypt ""

(perfumes - candies)

....
....
....



"A visit to the Pyramids"

Guiding words: (holiday -bus -sang- tourists- camels - snacks - happy)

....
....
....

9

"Egyptian spices "

(cooking – secret)

....
....
....

10

(A trip to cairo)

(activities – explore)

....
....
....

11

(Write an email of about [50-60] words to your teacher mr . ali inviting him to a celebration in your school . your name is omar , your email addreaa is omar@gmail.com , your teachers email is mrali@yahoo.com .

Guiding elements (event – attend)

....
....
....
....



(Your school)

....
....
....



(Marco Polo)

....
....
....

تم بحمد الله

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم " إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا " صدق الله العظيم



Listening text



The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, that some of which were difficult to find.



Marco Polo is an Italian explorer and a writer. He is one of the first people from the west to visit China. He went to China in the 13thury. He wrote a diary about his experiences. The diary is called The Travels of Marco Polo.

3

I'm Lara. I'm very organized. I like to be tidy and careful, and I'm shy too. I worry about talking to people. My sister Lyly, is very clever. She's intelligent and good at schoolwork. My brother seif is very polite. He speaks carefully and correctly, and he shows respect. My brother, Maged, is friendly. He's nice to others and helpful.





My name is Seif. I am in primary 6. I want to go to the library. It's on the second floor. I am going to read some books about famous places. Then I'm going to borrow a book to read at home.

5

I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome. The Pyramids were huge and the stones were a sort of golden color. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful - ancient and mysterious.

6

Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and ate very well. They ate vegetables and fruits. They also ate a lot of bread. They ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They ate some eggs and cheese from cows and goats. They used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks. They also used spices to make their cooking taste better.

7

Many years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs.

8

Little Deer runs through the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees a wolf. The wolf has a drink from the lake. The wolf wants to eat him.

Answers





First term Questions Bank





Question 01 Listen and circle the correct answer



Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 - It was.........................because it had a lot of ingredients.
(expensive - medium – difficult – cheap)
2. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong....................
(army - spices -recipes – perfumes)
3. The most popular perfume was called.............
(captain -kasper- capine – kapet)
4. Some of ingredients were...............to find.
(easy- less - difficult – little)

2

Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 - Marco Polo is an Italian.............and a writer.
(archaeologist - architect- explorer- engineer)
2 - He went to China in the 13th..............
(month – day- week – Century)
3 - He wrote a diary about his..............
(voyages- trips – camels- experiences)
4 - his..............is called the travels of Marco Polo
(ship – diary- record – adventure)



Listen and circle the correct answer

1 - Lara is...............She worries about talking to people.
(shy - excited – messy- tidy)
2 - Lyly is very clever. She's very...............at school work.
(bad – terrible- awful- good)
3 - Seif is very............He speaks carefully and correctly.
(polite - rude- annoying- naughty)
4 - Maged is friendly. He's..............to others and helpful.
(impolite -nice- unpleasant- disrespectful)



Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 - Seif is in primary.............(four – five - six - three)
2 - He wants to go to the..............(zoo - library - school - park)
3 - The library is on the.................floor.
(second - first - third - fourth)
4 - He is going to read some books about famous...........
(people- seas - foods - places)

5

Listen and circle the correct answer

1 The Pyramids are in................
(Giza – Cairo- Alexandria – Aswan)
2 - The Pyramids were.............. and the stones were a sort of golden color.
(small – tiny – little - huge)
3 - The Great Pyramid is the.............of the three pyramids.
(tallest - biggest - shortest – smallest)
4 - The Great Pyramid is..........meters high.
(174- 147 – 142- 144)

6

Listen and circle the correct answer

1 - Ancient Egyptians took care of their.................and ate very well.
(hair - bodies - pets - homes)
2 - They ate a lot of.................
(meat - sweets - bread - rice)
3 - They ate..........from cows and goats.
(cheese - honey - milk – tea)
4 - They used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit..................
(cakes - drinks - water – coffee)

7

Listen and circle the correct answer

1 - Local people found some unusual objects under the............
(water – river - ground - wood)

2 - These objects were beautiful............... sculptures.

(Clay - metal - plastic - glass)

3 - The sculptures were all in the same...............
(age - height - personality - style)

4 - The sculptures were in a sitting position with their................on their legs .
(hands - feet – fingers- noses)

8

Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 - Little Deer runs through the...............
(park- zoo- river- forest)
2 - He comes to a beautiful.............lake.
(yellow - blue - red - green)
3 - Little Deer sees a...............
(duck - dog - wolf – cat)
4 - The wolf wants to..................Little Deer.
(eat - drink - help - meet)

Question 02 choose the correct answer

1. She................to the library last week.
   ⓐ went ⓑ going ⓒ go ⓓ goes
2. He.........very happy yesterday.
   ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ is ⓓ has
3. They.................a lot of homework.
   ⓐ has ⓑ had ⓒ was ⓓ is
4. The archaeologists........many old tools last year.
   ⓐ find ⓑ don't find ⓒ finds ⓓ found
5. Did you................. cake for the birthday yesterday?
   ⓐ made ⓑ make ⓒ making ⓓ makes
6. They..............at the cinema last night.
   ⓐ are ⓑ is ⓒ was ⓓ were
7. We...............win the match last week.
   ⓐ didn't ⓑ don't ⓒ weren't ⓓ wasn't
9. We...............a great time at the party yesterday.
   ⓐ having ⓑ have ⓒ has ⓓ had
10. ....you at the museum last week?
   ⓐ Did ⓑ Will ⓒ Were ⓓ Is

11. What did they...........about the accident?
    - a) wrote
    - b) writing
    - c) write
    - d) writes
12. The farmer used the farming.......to cut the dead tree.
    - a) spoons
    - b) tools
    - c) paper
    - d) water
13. There are a lot of...............in the desert.
    - a) oceans
    - b) rivers
    - c) seas
    - d) sand dunes
14. We are................by the wonderful view of the Nile.
    - a) empty
    - b) different
    - c) exhausted
    - d) fascinated
15. They went towards the empty............of the desert.
    - a) ocean
    - b) wasteland
    - c) farm
    - d) river
16. He................music in the party yesterday.
    - a) playing
    - b) play
    - c) plays
    - d) played
17. We went on a trip in the.....................sunshine.
    - a) metal
    - b) warm
    - c) plastic
    - d) cold
18. Koshari is a/an................Egyptian meal.
    - a) international
    - b) traditional
    - c) weak
    - d) modern
19. . They don't know anything about this culture. It's a...........
    - a) mystery
    - b) file
    - c) story
    - d) project
20. Did you..................the Pyramids.?
    - a) are visiting
    - b) visit
    - c) visiting
    - d) visits
21. To...............means to move from side to side.
    - a) ask
    - b) dream
    - c) sway
    - d) explore
22. He cut the...........of the flowers to use it.
    - a) petals
    - b) ropes
    - c) drops
    - d) hands
23. A wick is a little cotton.............inside the candle
    - a) stick
    - b) drop
    - c) tree
    - d) rope
24. How............... milk do you want in your coffee?
    - a) much
    - b) many
    - c) high
    - d) often

How many...............are there in the kitchen?

25 (a) sugar (b) oil (c) water (d) spoons

Are there..................tigers in Egypt?

26 (a) much (b) some (c) a little (d) any

There is................ of traffic.

27 (a) a lot (b) a few (c) many (d) any

We have...............figs in the fridge.

28 (a) a little (b) lot (c) a few (d) any

.....................stores are there in the mall?

(a) How much (b) How long (c) How often (d) How many

29 I can't find...............pens in my bag.

(a) some (b) a lot (c) any (d) an

30 I'm............forward to the party to see my friends.

(a) cycling (b) putting (c) looking (d) making

31 I am a slow..................I take four weeks to finish reading a book.

(a) writer (b) robot (c) driver (d) reader

32 Are........ listening to music?

(a) I (b) she (c) he (d) they

33 He.............playing games at the moment.

(a) not (b) don't (c) isn't (d) have

34 I'm.................a birthday party today.

(a) have (b) had (c) has (d) having

35 Why........ they running fast?

(a) do (b) will (c) have (d) are

36 ....is the air that comes out of your mouth.

(a) View (b) Sound (c) Tradition (d) Breath

37 Please, call me to.............if you can come or not.

(a) confirm (b) sail (c) forget (d) hope

38. Today, we..................to the theater to watch a play.
    - (a) goes
    - (b) going
    - (c) are going
    - (d) to go
39. No, he isn't............................ is at the school.
    - (a) sleeping
    - (b) sleep
    - (c) slept
    - (d) sleeps
40. When...........they coming?
    - (a) are
    - (b) do
    - (c) had
    - (d) will
41. We need an adult to let off the..................in the sky.
    - (a) candles
    - (b) fireworks
    - (c) cakes
    - (d) fans
42. He blew out the............. with one breath.
    - (a) candy
    - (b) candle
    - (c) camel
    - (d) carpet
43. ....are a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water and eggs.
    - (a) Presents
    - (b) Fish
    - (c) Peaches
    - (d) Noodles
44. They were................when they found the museum empty.
    - (a) heavy
    - (b) closed
    - (c) astonished
    - (d) difficult
47. This royal ring is................... It costs a lot of money.
    - (a) precious
    - (b) cheap
    - (c) weak
    - (d) broken
48. How.............water does the plant need?
    - (a) long
    - (b) many
    - (c) often
    - (d) much
49. Can I have.....................fresh grapes?
    - (a) little
    - (b) some
    - (c) much
    - (d) a lot
50. ....there any toothpaste in the tube?
    - (a) Are
    - (b) Have
    - (c) Were
    - (d) Is
51. cats have...................claws and teeth
    - (a) blunt
    - (b) sharp
    - (c) cold
    - (d) k
52. We went to the park,..........it was closed.
    - (a) because
    - (b) but
    - (c) or
    - (d) for
53. my new school is great ,................it's far from my house
    - (a) as
    - (b) so
    - (c) but
    - (d) and

54. There's someone here, I can hear his............
(a) clothes (b) voice (c) books (d) face

55. I'm ....in ancient Egypt.
(a) interest (b) interested (c) interesting (d) interests

56. She helps in a local school as a.................three days a week
(a) volunteer (b) space (c) neighborhood (d) community

57. I live in an....................in the city with my family.
(a) tent (b) apartment block (c) cave (d) factory

58. I have a new car.........helps me go to work faster.
(a) where (b) when (c) who (d) which

59. He...........eats rice because he doesn't like it
(a) rarely (b) always (c) don't (d) usually

60. Let's.............. to the beach with our friends
(a) goes (b) went (c) go (d) going

61. How..........do you study English? Three times a week
(a) much (b) many (c) long (d) often

62. There are many different............of bees
(a) species (b) residents (c) pens (d) branche

63. When we have free time, we can just.............out and have a good time.
(a) miss (b) hang (c) pass (d) taste

64. We sometimes...........cycling on holidays
(a) goes (b) going (c) gone (d) go

65. My friend Amr is intelligent, he is good at maths, he is...............
(a) messy (b) bad (c) clever (d) ugly

66. The weather.........Sunny in Egypt in summer.
(a) is usually (b) always is (c) never is (d) usually is

67. How often..................Noha visit her grandparents?
(a) is (b) do (c) does (d) has

68. Egypt is creating a new..............line for the train station.
    (a) airport (b) ferry (c) railway (d) pool
69. Hany..................drinks cola. He likes healthy drinks
    (a) doesn't (b) isn't (c) never (d) always
70. Hani usually...............to school by bus
    (a) go (b) don't (c) goes (d) going
71. She doesn't like to talk to strange people because she is............
    (a) nervous (b) tidy (c) clever (d) shy
72. I.................my cousins every week
    (a) visit (b) visits (c) visiting (d) doesn't visit
73. Come.........Nada. I'll show you where the classroom is.
    (a) away (b) out (c) on (d) for
74. Farmers use..................to kill insects that eat the crops
    (a) fertilizers (b) crops (c) chemicals (d) lemons
75. The results of the students last test are...........
    (a) surprise (b) surprised (c) surprises (d) surprising
76. My father is the person.........taught me to ride a bike.
    (a) where (b) when (c) who (d) which
77. is Magdy the boy..................lives in your building
    (a) who (b) where (c) which (d) whose
78. I'm very...............I want to eat
    (a) angry (b) hungry (c) nervous (d) worried
79. My little sister is afraid............the dark.
    (a) next (b) out (c) of (d) in
80. When I forget my book at school, I can................my friend's book.
    (a) eat (b) share (c) sure (d) help
81. He tells me funny stories. He makes me...........
    (a) laugh (b) angry (c) sorry (d) cry

82. We play basketball in the...............
   (a) laboratory (b) fountain (c) pool (d) **gymnasium**

83. What is the best animal to keep as a.............at home?
   (a) giant (b) **pet** (c) play (d) ball

84. I really love the red flowers ....grow in our garden
   (a) who (b) **which** (c) where (d) when

85. An ostrich is a big bird..................can't fly
   (a) **which** (b) where (c) whose (d) whose

86. ....is good for the soil
   (a) Papyrus (b) **Natural fertilizer** (c) Butter (d) Cheese

87. Cats make the best ....
   (a) bats (b) **pets** (c) hats (d) k

88. They want to ride on a.............
   (a) **rollercoaster** (b) camel (c) horse (d) bus

89. This ancient mosque has a very high.....
   (a) mountain (b) **minaret** (c) cinema (d) company

90. He blew out the.....................with one breath.
   (a) candy (b) carpet (c) camel (d) **candle**

91. My uncle likes to.............new places, so he always travels to many countries.
   (a) ask (b) **explore** (c) write (d) take

92. I'm...........forward to the party to see my friends.
   (a) cycling (b) **looking** (c) putting (d) making

93. . When she..................... much cake, she gets a stomach ache.
   (a) **eats** (b) ate (c) eaten (d) eating

94. It's helpful if you...........down what you want to do.
   (a) **write** (b) writes (c) writing (d) written

95. My dad...............the match now
   (a) watches (b) watched (c) watch (d) **is watching**

96. She suddenly fell in a............and got her clothes wet.
   - (a) glass (b) **puddle** (c) minaret (d) height

97. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim...........spring
   - (a) by (b) **in** (c) at (d) on

98. We go to Hurghada...........summer every year.
   - (a) on (b) at (c) **in** (d) to

99. You can go..........biking in the desert.
   - (a) **quad** (b) cycling (c) quick (d) swim

100. Noha is..................of heights, she can't climb the minaret.
   - (a) **afraid** (b) excited (c) proud (d) sure

101. He gets up .... seven o'clock
   - (a) in (b) of (c) on (d) **at**

102. When the clouds are red, it............there's dust in the sky
   - (a) meant (b) mean (c) meaning (d) **means**

103. If you don't know a word, you can...................it up in a dictionary.
   - (a) looks (b) looked (c) looking (d) **look**

104. There're many rides to try in the.........
   - (a) minaret (b) **theme park** (c) library (d) museum

105. Hana is sending the..............
   - (a) balloons (b) fireworks (c) playlist (d) **invitations**

106. Mazen will hang up the............
   - (a) playlist (b) birthday cake (c) **streamers** (d) invitations

107. Please,.................me if you need help.
   - (a) calling (b) calls (c) called (d) **call**

108. I was born...................April 17th 2012
   - (a) at (b) **on** (c) in (d) of

109. What is your brother........... at the moment?
   - (a) do (b) **doing** (c) did (d) does

110. Are..........listening to music?
   a) I b) she c) they d) he

111. She...........helping her mother.
   a) don't b) isn't c) doesn't d) aren't

112. They're going to go quad biking in the........
   a) river b) sea c) desert d) lake

113. Look! He is.................. after his dog.
   a) run b) runs c) running d) ran

114. How can you make pizza if you...........know the recipe?
   a) aren't b) don't c) didn't d) couldn't

115. Can you.............up the balloons?
   a) send b) blow c) write d) cut

116. We need an adult to............off the fireworks.
   a) decorate b) send c) make d) let

117. We need scissors to cut the.................
   a) song b) spring c) ring d) string

118. They're riding...............the rollercoaster. It's amazing!
   a) next b) between c) on d) in

119. We are buying the decoration..................
   a) yesterday b) usually c) often d) today

Question 03 — Read and complete the text with the words in the box

1

(brains-longer-concentrate - have - forget)

If you want to study hard, you should follow these tips. Study for about 30 minutes but no **longer** if you try to study for hours without a break, you can't **concentrate** When you **have** regular breaks that help you more. It's also better to study at the same time each day even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's **brains** work better if they have a regular routine.

2

(tray-eat- temperature - stir – flat)

This is salt dough recipe. Heat the oven on a low **temperature** mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, **stir** the mixture until it starts to form a ball. Put the ball of dough on a **flat** surface and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out into numbers or letters. Put your finished items on a baking **tray** and bake in the oven for 3 hours.



(helpful - neighborhood - clean - weekends - eat)

Ahmed and Ayman are friends. On the **weekends** they visit. Ahmed's grandfather. They help to **clean** the street and water the trees in the **neighborhood** there .are many volunteers. They are very **helpful** they sometimes grow more new trees.



(family-presents-birthday-language - candles)

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make **birthday** cakes for our children. We put **candles** on them to show their age. We often have parties with our **family** and friends. The children usually get **presents** too.



(geese - eggs - Ancient - cheese – festivals)

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! Most people in **Ancient** Egypt only ate a little meat. They usually eat meat at **festivals** They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks , **geese** and chickens. They also ate some eggs and **cheese** from cows or goats.



(wildlife - green - areas- urban)

Mini forest is an organization. It plants small **areas** of trees in the middle of our cities. These special **green** areas help people enjoy nature. People who work in this organization always work hard to find the best **urban** location for our forests where people and **wildlife** need nature most.



(fantasy-shows-rollercoaster - matches - surprise)

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday **surprise** . at the carnival! It's an amazing place. When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of **fantasy** it's exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the **rollercoaster** and theatres where you can watch **shows** . There are places to eat and stores, too.

8

(fountain-fields - area - benches - break)

This is the West Court. It is a large open **area** where students have **break** There is a playground and playing field .There are also **benches** to sit on under the trees and a water **fountain** if you feel thirsty. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden

9

(dry - fascinated - dunes - wind – move)

Marco Polo was twenty-one when he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time he was **fascinated** by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the **dunes** were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long. Their shapes were always changing. The **wind** made them move and roll like huge yellow waves.In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the **dry** sea".in their language.

10

(water vegetables - clean - sell – community)

Ahmed and Mahmoud work in a community garden on the roof of an apartment block. They grow **vegetables** and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they **sell** them too. Ahmed and Mahmoud think the **community** is a good idea because the plants help to **clean** the air in the city.



(breaks up-concentrate - down)

We should study for about thirty minutes. We can't **concentrate** if we study for hours. We work more when we have regular **breaks** It's good to write **down** what you want to do in each time in your study. You should also eat a healthy meal at lunchtime.



(soft - walk- friendly – eat - pets)

Cats are my favourite animals and I think they make the best **pets** They are beautiful, with **soft** fur which is nice to touch . They are clean and calm animals and are usually **friendly** They like people, but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a **walk** every day.



(shows-happy- polite - bad – school)

Esraa is a new student at our school. She is very **polite** and clever. Radwa is Esraa's new friend who helps her get to know the **school** Radwa takes Esraa around and **shows** her where their classrooms are. Esraa is very **happy**



(family-presents-birthday-language – candles)

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make **birthday** cakes for our children. We put **candles** on them to show their age. We often have parties with our **family** and friends. The children usually get **presents** too



(humans - archaeologists - information - advanced-tools)

The area where the Nok people lived was in Nigeria. People found sculptures in this area, and **archaeologists** went there to study them. The Nok culture was **advanced** and its people made sculptures from clay, and other farming **tools** from iron and stone. Their sculptures were usually of **humans** These sculptures were beautifully made and had large eyes and hair styles.

Question 04 Read the text and answer the questions



To be healthy, our bodies need food like meat, rice, fruit and vegetables. We need a healthy diet to give us energy. When we do sports, our bodies use more energy and more food. Watching TV doesn't need many quantities of energy. Eating a healthy diet and doing sports are important. People of all ages should do sports to be fit.

A) Choose the correct answer.



1. To be..............our bodies need food like meat, rice, fruit and vegetables.
(fit - weak - fat – healthy)
2 - Watching TV needs............energy than doing sports.
(less - big - large – more)
3 - The underlined word "healthy" is opposite of............
(unhealthy - untidy - unhappy - important)

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does a healthy diet give us? energy

5. What should people of all ages do to be fit? People of all ages should do sports

2

Dear Mr Ahmed,
I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday, March 21. As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We hope you can attend
Date: Sunday, March 21
Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm
Location: School Hall
RSVP in writing to the email address above Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.
Yours sincerely,
Randa Gamal

A - Choose the correct answer :

1. The main idea of the text is about a/an...................
(school's teachers - school uniform - school's Mother's Day celebration - school project)

2. The underlined word " attend" means to.................
(leave- come - talk - hop)

3. The celebration will be at the.

(school library - school garden- school hall - school laboratory)

B. Answer the following questions.

4. How long is the celebration? Three hours

5. When is the event? Sunday, March 21



In a village, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The **lovely** garden always makes the children happy. But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away.

A - Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "lovely" means "................
(ugly - **beautiful** - noisy – hard)

2. The giant lives in ....
(town - city - tower - **village**)

3. The giant is.....................
(smart – kind -**selfish** - poor)

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Why do children like the giant's garden?

Because the garden always makes the children happy.

5. How is the garden now?

The garden is empty and silent.



Rana went on a trip with her family to Marco Polo Museum. They went on a big ship. It's on an island called Korcula. It's a very **interesting** museum all about the travels of Marco Polo. Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. Marco Polo wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called The Travels of Marco Polo. Traveling to China was very difficult. The journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. Marco Polo was a famous.............
(explorer – scientist – doctor – vet)
2. The underlined word "interesting" is the opposite of "..................
(nice- boring - wonderful – great)

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Rana go with her family?
Rana went on a trip with her family to Marco Polo Museum.
4. How long did Marco Polo's journey take?
The journey took years!
6. Where is Marco Polo Museum?
It's on an island called Korcula.



Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister's birthday. We are all happy and busy, too. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister's party. I use the scissors to cut the string. My brother is blowing up some balloons. They're bright and colorful. We need to hang up these balloons, too. My mom made a nice cake for my sister. Dalia and Noha are my friends. Now, they are decorating the birthday cake. We have 10 candles for the cake to show my sister's age. My father sent the invitations to our friends. We are all very excited!

A-Choose the correct answer

1. This text is about "My sister's..................
(school- birthday- friends -balloons)

2. My sister is.............years old.
(nine - six – ten- fifteen)

3. My.............sent the invitations.
(mom - friends - brother – dad)

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What is the writer doing? hanging up the streamers

5. Who decorated the birthday cake? Dalia and Noha



The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flower ,herbs and some types of menirals then mixed with oil to make a cream Or they pressed the dry ingredients in to a cone shape to make a incense . In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!

A. Choose the correct answer

1 - The main idea of the text is about ....in AncientEgypt
(festivals- perfumes - boats – plant)
2 - the underlined word "expensive "is the opposite of ....
(precious- difficult – common – cheap)
3 - They pressed the dry ingredients of the perfumes into a..............shape
(square - star – cone- Circle)

B - answer the following questions.

4. What was the most popular perfume called? The most popular perfume was called kapet.

5. What can you see in Ancient Egyptian paintings? men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!



Hi Samer,
How are you? I'm well and New York is great! Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city. New York has a lot of green spaces. There are also a lot of projects to create parks and green areas in parts of the city that no one uses now, like the famous High Line. It passes through our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. It's really cool. Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some local residents had an idea to make the old railway into a big, long park. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It's 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance and eat delicious food, or just hang out with your friends there. I think it's my favorite place in New York. "" Wael ""

A - Choose the correct answer

1. The text is mainly about "the............
(water sports – trains - High Line - school day)
2. The underlined phrase "passes through" means.......
(cuts down - goes up - moves between - looks forward)

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can people do in the High Line?

They can see art works, watch a theater performance and eat delicious food, or just hang out with their friends there.

4. Does Wael like living on high buildings? Why? Yes, because he great view of the city.

Question 05 put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. to surprised - see - you - I'm!
   I'm surprised to see you !
2. moving-Hare's - Something-house-is-inside.
   Something is moving inside Hare's house.
3. sixteenth-block-is-on-the-Our-floor-apartment.
   Our apartment block is on the the sixteenth floor.
4. with I-my family-went-to-Hurghada.
   I went to Hurghada with my family.
5. famous-What-were-for-they?
   What were they famous for ?
6. wind-noises-made-The-strange.
   The wind made strange noises.
7. grass-green-turns - brown - The
   The green grass turns brown.
9. in-block-Do-live-you-an apartment?
   Do you live in an apartment block ?
10. is-A felucca-to-sail - difficult.
    A felucca is difficult to sail.
11. friends-I-a lot-have-of-at school
    I have a lot of friends at school.
12. the bravest in - Lions-are-animals- the world
    Lions are the bravest animal in the world.
13. garden-have-a-They-wonderful.
    They have a wonderful garden.
14. many-Archaeologists-in-found - the area - sculptures
    Archaeologists found many sculptures in the area.
15. How-dunes-are-the-big-sand?
    How big are the sand dunes ?

16. they-the afternoon - What-in-did-do?
    What did they do in the afternoon ?
17. experience-had-a-I-wonderful.
    I had a wonderful experience.
18. lives - family - Wael's - a tall - in - building.
    Wael's family lives in a tall building.
19. is-city-Our apartment-in-the-center
    Our apartment is in the city center.
20. Italian-an-Marco-was-explorer- Polo.
    Marco Polo was an Italian explorer .
21. sea- He-a long-went on-by-voyage.
    He went on a long voyage by sea.
22. was-your-vacation- Where- last?
    Where was your last vacation ?
23. garden - The community-sounds - idea - an amazing.
    The community garden sounds an amazing idea .
24. different - a lot of - There-are- restaurants - here.
    There are a lot of different restaurants here.
25. New York-very- noisy-is-the time - all.
    New York is very noisy all the time.
26. flowers-lovely-These - smell.
    These flowers smell lovely.
27. in - She - interested - science - is.
    She is interested in science.
28. produce-garden-We-a lot of -vegetables - in our.
    We produce a lot of vegetables in our garden.
29. English - my school - favorite - subject - is.
    English is my favorite subject.
30. perfume - We can - oil - use - candles - to make.
    We can use perfume oil to make candles.
31. Egyptians-care- of their - Ancient-took-bodies.
    Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies.

32. .spaces-has- a lot - of- New York - green
New York has a lot of green spaces.
33. do - study - you - Arabic - Where?
Where do you study Arabic ?
34. help-clean- Roof - the air - in - the city-gardens
Roof gardens help clean the air in the city.
35. do- much - How- money -need- you?
How much money do you need ?
36. .are-this-doing-What-you-week?
What are you doing this week ?
37. .the-cycling - I-weekend-am-on.
I am cycling on the weekend.
38. He-a-organizing-is-party.
He is organizing a party.
39. shows-everyone - Ali-to-respect
Ali shows respect to everyone.
40. go meet - Let's- some-friends-my-of.
Let's go meet some of my friends.
41. modern-We-are-our- proud of - buildings.
We are proud of our modern buildings.
42. Egyptians-mint-The-made- candies - Ancient.
The Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.
43. shampoo-for-we-What-use-do?
What do we use for shampoo ?
44. never-We-for our-use-chemicals - plants.
We never use chemicals for our plants.
47. the kitchen - There -some- carrots-are-in
There are some carrots in the kitchen.
48. your-vegetables - garden - a lot of - Does - produce?
Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables ?
49. have-I-extra-an-book-for you
I have an extra book for you.

50. a lot of - Does - vegetables - your - produce - garden?
   Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables ?
51. our-I-food-so-miss- much!
   I miss our food so much !
52. math - your - is - Who - teacher?
   Who is your math teacher ?
53. is - This - a large - area - open.
   This is a large open area.
54. you- your books-Do-have-all-yet?
   Do you have all your books yet ?
55. rains - It - rarely- the Western – Desert - in
   It rarely rains in the Western Desert.
56. The selfish-anything- doesn't-boy-share
   The selfish boy doesn't share anything.
57. look-plants-We-after- need to - our
   We need to look after our plants.
58. things-you-How-are-with?
   How are things with you ?
59. park - There's-near-a big - river - the
   There's a big park near the river.
60. like -sports - People - the park-at-to do
   People like to do sports at the park.
61. our-I-miss-much-food-so!
   I miss our food so much.
62. often -does-cycling - How-he-go?
   How often does he go cycling ?
63. neighborhood-We-a community-have-in our-garden
   We have a community garden in our neighbourhood.
64. sunny-a- It's- day.
   It's a sunny day.
65. have-I-extra-an-book-for you
   I have an extra book for you.

Question 06

Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets

1. Noha and Gameel made (make) pizza last night.
2. If he presses (press)the button, the machine works.
3. I went to Alexandria on (in) the weekend
4. Where did you find [found] your books?
5. When you buy two T-shirts, you get (gets) one free.
6. What do (does) they use to make paper in the past?
7. I visited [visit] my grandparents last week.
8. 1. The children feel bored (boring) when there is nothing to do
9. The boys are riding [ride) their bikes now.
10. Mom is getting [get] the food ready.
11. Does your aunt always bake (baking) cakes when you visit her?
12. We don't have any [some] water,
13. You can call [calls] me if you need any help.
14. No, I didn't find [not found) my book yesterday.
15. The weather is very hot in (on) summer
16. The English exam was [be] very easy last week.
17. What can you (you can) do if you have free time?
18. This is the room where (who) I put my clothes
19. If I listen to music, it helps (help) me study
20. Where do (are)they live? They live in Cairo ?
21. Don't (not study) when you're hungry.
22. How often does (do) Ali do sports?
23. Should we go quad biking on (at) Tuesday?
24. Ali doesn't go (not go) to the the club everyday
25. How often (long) do you play video games? Twice a week
26. Are they celebrating [celebrate] at the park?
27. she eats (eat)unhealthy food
28. My dad always has (have) a healthy breakfast.
29. Ali is very interested (interesting) in math

30. The film was boring (bored), so I didn't want to watch it again
31. He often reads (reading)magazines in his free time
32. Ahmed is a boy who (which) plays tennis with me
33. She always meets (meets always) up her friends on Saturday.
34. I don't like this story . It's boring (bored)
35. Do [Does) you buy a new dress if you have a party?
36. She studies hard ,so she always (never) gets a good grade
37. Are you playing tennis today? - Yes, I am (be)
38. I'm always on time. I'm never (sometimes) late
39. My friend John lives in (at) England.
40. Ahmed never (always) travels to China. He doesn't go there
41. Is (Does) she studying English?
42. Bees are insects which (where) make honey
43. Ali and Ahmed are (is) helping their mum.
44. My mom studied (studies] medicine when she was at the
45. Did your mom buy [bought) a new dress for the party?
46. They are having (haven't) enjoying their vacation at the moment.
47. How many (much) ingredients are in the recipe?
48. Ahmed is (are) watching TV.
49. Are they watching [watch) a funny movie?
50. This recipe needs some (any) butter and sugar
51. If you don't have a pen, you can tell (told) me
52. The freezer doesn't work if you don't close (not close) the door properly
53. He isn't (doesn't) riding his bike now
54. Did your mom have [had] a new dress for the party?
55. We are enjoying [enjoy) our summer holiday.
56. If you try (tried) to study for hours, you can't concentrate
57. He didn't go [went] on the vacation with his family.
58. Are (Be) there any children on the trip yesterday?
59. We got [getting] high marks in the exam yesterday.
60. She uses a little [few] butter to cook.

61. Are there **any** [some] chocolate chip cookies left?
62. **Is** [Be] he playing football at the moment?
63. Please hurry. We don't have **much** [many] time.
64. We need **a little** (a few) oil
65. Noha and Gameela **made** (make) pizza last night.
66. **Are** (Be) there any children on the trip yesterday?
67. When I was six, I **had** [have] a nice bike.
68. They **don't** (doesn't) live near the park
69. my brother likes dates .He **always** (never)eats them
70. We sometimes **go** (goes) cycling on holidays
71. This is the boy **who** (which) broke the window
72. The laboratory is a place **where** (who) students study science.
73. it's a very **exciting** (excited) film .i 'll watch it again
74. We **don't** (doesn't) like tennis
75. **Are** (Do) they playing football at the moment?
76. My father arrives **at** (in) six o'clock every day.
77. What **are** [be] you buying?
78. She **is cleaning** (clean) the house this week.
79. we **are cycling** (cycle) today.

Question 07 puntcuate the following

1. i wasn't angry
   I wasn't angry.
2. chinese people are often older
   Chinese people are often older.
3. We are organizing a special party on friday
   We are organizing a special party on Friday.
4. ali is good at math
   Ali is good at math.
5. how does Noha feel today
   How does Noha feel today?

6. cats are clean and calm animals
Cats are clean and calm animals.
7. did your parents attend the school's Mother's Day celebration
Did your parents attend the school's Mother's Day celebration?
9. how much wax do we need
How much wax do we need?
10. i miss my favorite egyptian breakfast.
I miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast.
11. we do experiments in the science laboratory
We do experiments in the science laboratory.
12. No they didn't
No, they didn't.
13. what do you grow,eyad
What do you grow, Eyad ?
14. how often does mazin do exercise
How often does Mazin do exercise ?
15. i don t go to bed late
I don't go to bed late.
16. this is the ahmed Zewail building
This is the Ahmed Zewail building.
17. what's your favorite animal, saleh
What's your favorite animal, Saleh?
18. We are organizing a special party on friday
We are organizing a special party on Friday.
19. did your parents attend the school's Mother's Day celebration
Did your parents attend the school's Mother's Day celebration?
20. who is going to make a playlist
Who is going to make a playlist?
21. chinese people are often older
Chinese people are often older.
22. my mom loves museums
My mom loves museums.
23. I play tennis at 3 o clock
I play tennis at 3 o'clock.

24. how can you get to giza
How can you get to Giza?
25. kareem is a clever boy
Kareem is a clever boy.
26. what is sally doing
What is Sally doing?

Question 08
write a paragraph of FIFTY words using the following guide elements



Write a paragraph of about (40-50) words using the following

(Birthdays around the world)

(food - cakes)

Birthdays are celebrated around the world. Children like party food. They eat cakes. They like to blow out candles on their birthday cakes. They like to get presents. In China, people like to eat noodles or peaches on their birthday.

2

Write an email of about fifty (50) words about your neighborhood to your friend Ali. Your friend's email address is aliahmed@yahoo.com. Your name is Magdy and your email address is magdy@yahoo.com.
Guiding elements:
What do you like about your neighborhood?
What can you do there?
To...........
From.............
Subject

To: aliahmed@yahoo.com
From: magdy@yahoo.com
Subject: My neighborhood
Hi Ali,
How are you? My neighborhood is great. Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city. We have a lot of green spaces in our neighborhood. There are also a lot of projects to create parks and green areas. In my neighborhood, there are nice restaurants. There is also a sports club where we can do sports. We all help each other to keep our neighborhood clean and great.

Yours, Magdy



Write a paragraph of about (50-60) words using the following

"Your pet"

(independent - scared - claws - fur)

There are a lot of animals which we can keep as a pet. Cats are my favorite animals. Cats are beautiful. They have soft fur which is nice to touch. I like cats because they are clean and calm. Cats are independent. You don't need to take them for a walk every day. Cats have sharp claws and teeth. They only use them when they are scared. I like petting cats because this makes me happy.



Write a blog post of about [50] words using the following guiding elements.

Your name is Mahmoud .

(Sharm El-Sheikh)

Where is the place?
Who is with you?
Why do you like it?
What can you do there?

" Sharm El-Sheikh "

Monday March 3rd

Today, I'm in Sharm El-Sheikh. SharmEl-Sheikh is an amazing place for holiday. It's an interesting and busy town by the Red Sea. Sharm El Sheikh is my favorite holiday destination because there are lots of things to see and do there. I can go quad biking with my sister in the desert. In the morning, we relaxed on the beach. Yesterday, I visited St Catherine's monastery. It's a wonderful day.



Write an email of about (50-60] words to your friend Adel about how you spend your free time. Your name is Bahgat and your email address is berooo@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is adeldan@yahoo.com.
Guiding elements: (get outside - reading - go running – cycle)

From:berooo@yahoo.com
To:adeldan@yahoo.com
Subject: Spending my free time
Dear Adel,
How are things? I'd like to tell you about my free time. I don't have much free time because I'm studying for my exams. There are a lot of activities I like doing

in my free time. I like getting outside. I go running every morning in the park. I also cycle on the weekends with my dad. I like meeting my friends in my free time. Reading is my favorite hobby but I'm a slow reader. I love history books, so I can spend my free time reading about history. Write soon and tell me your news.
Bahgat

6

(The Gobi Desert)

Guiding elements: (sand dunes - wind – dry- local people)

The Gobi Desert is very hot and dry.There are many sand dunes. Some of the dunes are sixty meters tall and twenty meters long. The wind makes the dunes move and roll like huge yellow waves. The local people called the desert the dry sea in their language. Marco Polo crossed this desert on his way to China. It was a great adventure.

7

Write a paragraph of about (50-60) words using the following :

"" personal care in Ancient Egypt ""

(perfumes - candies)

Ancient Egyptians used many of theproducts we use today for personal care. They used perfumes and toothpaste.Some perfumes in Ancient Egypt were made from flowers, herbs and some types of minerals. They mixed these flowers and herbs with oil to make a cream. The Ancient Egyptians made mint candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.

8

"A visit to the Pyramids"

Guiding words: (holiday -bus -sang- tourists- camels - snacks - happy)

Last Friday, we went to the Pyramids. We went there by bus. The Pyramids are great. We were happy there. We sang a lot of songs. We met tourists and rode camels and horses. We took a lot of photos. They were amazing. We had snacks.

9

"Egyptian spices "

(cooking – secret)

Spices are used in home cooking and restaurants We use so cooking and to cook food. We also use spices to make perfume and medicine. People can also buy spices from souks. Tourists buy beautifully packaged spices as souvenirs when when visit Egypt.



10

(A trip to cairo)

(activities – explore)

I love visiting new places on my vacation. I need to try some activities for the trip. There are lots of things to do in Cairo. I can visit the Manial Palace Museum with my friends. It's interesting. We can take photos there. We shouldn't forget to explore the Souks. We can climb the Bab Zuweila minaret. We'll have great fun!

11

(Write an email of about [50-60] words to your teacher mr . ali inviting him to a celebration in your school . your name is omar , your email addreaa is omar@gmail.com , your teachers email is mrali@yahoo.com .

Guiding elements (event – attend)

From :salahgroup@gmail.com
TO : mrayman@yahoo.com
Subject: Mother's Day Celebration in my school
Dear Mr Aymen
I'm writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for this celebration on Sunday March 21
[details below]. We are inviting students, teachers and parents.
We very much hope you can attend.
Date : Sunday March 21
Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm
Location: School Hall
RSVP in writing to the email address above
Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.
Yours sincerely
Salah Ali



(Your school)

My school is very big and amazing. There are many buildings in it. There is a new laboratory in our school. We can study science there. In the laboratory, there is equipment which we need to do experiments. Our school playground is a large open area. There are benches to sit on under the trees. We have a nice garden in our school. We grow plants in it. We have many laptops and tablets in our computer classrooms. This can help many students study easily.



(Marco Polo)

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He was one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went to China in the 13th century. He wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called "The Travels of Marco Polo". It was a very difficult journey to China. The journey took years. He sailed by ship on a long journey. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China.

تم بحمد الله

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم " إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا " صدق الله العظيم

مجانا وحصريا

حمل الآن

المراجعة رقم (4)

الترم الاول





Final Revision – Connect 6 - First Term

Writing: مهارة الكتابة :

learners are asked to write not less than 50 words on related to a specific topic using two giving guide elements that can phrases , questions, fact file, tables ....etc.   in one of the following writing forms:



يُطلب من المتعلمين كتابة ما لا يقل عن 50 كلمة تتعلق بموضوع معين باستخدام عنصري دليل يمكنهما ان يكونا عبارات، أسئلة، ملف حقائق، جداول ....إلخ في أحد أشكال الكتابة التالية:

1-paragraph	فقرة
2-E-mail	بريد اليكتروني
3-blog	مدونة
4- diary	يوميات

Paragraph:أولا البراجراف

عبارة عن عنوان ومجموعة من الجمل البسيطة لا تقل عن 50 كلمة. تأكد من أنك تبدأ جملتك بأحرف كبيرة وتنتهي بعلامات الترقيم الصحيحة. واليك اهم البراجرافات الواردة بالمنهج:

The community garden

Mariam and her friends work in a community garden. It's on the roof of an apartment block .They grow vegetables and fruit for people in the local area. The community garden is a good idea because the plants help to clean the air. The community garden project is a good place to make new friends.

Cats

Cats are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They're clean and calm animals. They are usually friendly. They like people but they're independent. Cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. When you pet a cat, it makes you happy.

My vacation

I love visiting new places. My trip is in Cairo. There are lots to see there, I can visit the museum first. Then I can take photos at the Manial Palace Museum for my school project. In Giza, there's a theme park, I can ride a rollercoaster there). It's amazing،

Birthdays around the world

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, we usually make birthday cakes for our children. We put candles on them to show their ages. Children usually get presents, Children like to blow out the candles. In the USA and Britain, they give good friends and family presents on their birthday even when they're adults. In China، people like to eat long noodles or peaches on theirs.

The village of Nok

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria، found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style . They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible.

Making candles

We need some wax for making the candles . Palm wax from Egyptian palm trees makes really nice candles, We need some perfume oil , We squeeze in about 40 drops of this oil to make three candles. We need one glass and one wick for each candle. We use some popsicle sticks to hold the wick up. We heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well.



ثانيا الايميل: Email



تأكد من كتابة عنوان البريد الإلكتروني لصديقك بشكل صحيح وإلا فلن يتلقى البريد الإلكتروني! تأكد من أنك تبدأ جملتك بأحرف كبيرة وتنتهي بعلامات الترقيم الصحيحة. البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي هو رسالة تكتبها إلى الأصدقاء أو العائلة. يجب أن تكون رسالة البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمية ودية في لهجتها، وأن تستخدم لغة غير رسمية وتشمل العبارات الافتتاحية والختامية.

From:	عنوان البريد الاليكتروني للمرسل.
To:	عنوان البريد الاليكتروني للمرسل اليه.
Subject:	عنوان الموضوع

Dear اسم المرسل اليه

How are you? I am happy to write this email to you.

………………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………see you soon

Yours

اسم المرسل

From:	ali @gamil.com
To:	ahmed@gmail.com
Subject:	Neighborhood

Dear Ahmed

How are you? I am happy to write this email to you. My apartment is on the sixteenth floor. We have a great view of the city. Our neighborhood has a lot of green spaces. There are many projects to create parks and green areas here. There is a railway line. We have many gardens with different species of plants and trees. The community garden is my favorite place in the neighborhood. .see you soon

Yours

Ali





ثالثا المدونة blog post:

يجب أن يكون لمنشور المدونة عنوان وتاريخ ، وأن تستخدم لغة غير رسمية وضمائر الشخص الأول (أنا ، لي ، ملكي). يجب أن يتضمن قصة شخصية ، وعادة ما يعطي آراء الكاتب ومشاعره حول تجاربهم. غالبًا ما يضيف المدونون صورًا لجعل مدوناتهم أكثر جاذبية.

أسم صاحب المدونة's blog	BLOG HOME	ABOUT ME	LINKS	ARCHIVE

تاريخ المدونة

عنوان موضوع المدونة

....

....

....

....

....

Write a blog post about a place you like visiting.

- Where is the place?
- What can you do there?

Yoman's blog	BLOG HOME	ABOUT ME	LINKS	ARCHIVE

12th December 2023

At the carnival

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy – it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater. You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world – snowy mountains even under the ocean.



رابعا اليوميات :diary



تحتوي اليوميات على ميزات تختلف عن أنواع النصوص الأخرى. بالعادة:

- تحتوي على فقرات قصيرة، تتحدث كل واحدة منها عما حدث في يوم واحد.
- مكتوب بأسلوب غير رسمي ويستخدم ضمائر المتكلم (أنا، نحن، ملكي، الخ.).
- تصف أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآرائه.
- عادة ما يصف الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

تاريخ اليومية
....
....
....
....
....

Write a diary entry about a trip.

12 December

Today, I had an amazing experience … I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.

In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully and the music was magical and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

Review on unit 1- Green cities

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
community garden.	حديقة المجتمع.	harvest	محصول	passes through	يمر عبر
roof	سَطح	always	دائماً	railway line	خط السكة الحديدية
apartment block.	مبنى سكني.	natural fertilizer	الأسمدة الطبيعية	local residents	السكان المحليين
plant	نبات	occasionally	أحياناً	hang out	يتسكع
sometimes	أحيانا	rarely	نادرًا	miss	يفتقد
giant	عملاق	informal	غير رسمي	aid	مساعدة
selfish	أناني	formal	رسمي	thumb	ابهام

Exercise on Vocabulary:

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 – To hang ………….. means to spend time with your friends and relax together.
a-in b- on c- up d- out

2 – The …………………..are people who live in a neighborhood.
a-friends b- students c- neighbours d- pupils

3 – To ………………….. through is to move between
a-play b– pass c– path d– bath

4 – To…………………..is to want something you can't have.
a-mess b– Miss c– catch d– hold

5 – The railway ………………….. is a a road for trains
a-road b– bus c– line d– lane

6- The apartment ………………….. is a tall building.
a-back b– block c– book d– box

7- A …………………..is a substance obtained by or used in a chemical process
a-calorie b- chemical c– car d– cart

8-The time of year when the crops are gathered in on a farm is …………………..
a-harvest b– crop c– palm d– stem

9- A ………………….. is a substance added to soil to make plants grow well .
a-farm b– palm c– date d– fertilizer

10- To ………………….. is to put plants or seeds , etc , in the ground to grow.
a-plant b– planet c – put d– add



11- The .... is the top of a building

a-flat b– roof c– loaf d– floor

12- The .... garden is a big green space .

a-comet b– come c– community d– ball

13- Local .... are people who live in a particular place.

a-paper b– residents c– clubs d– classes

14- .... ,means caring only about yourself rather than others.

a-Selfish b– Social c– Miss d– Loss

15- Onions , lettuce and peppers are ....

a-fruit b– seeds c– vegetables d– trunk

16- We plant trees that .... live in that country.

a-normal b–normally c– usual d– abnormal

17-Only the Mini Forest volunteers look .... the trees.

a-for b– at c– out d- after

18-Mini Forest brings the benefits of a forest into the heart .... our cities.

a-of c– from c– in d– out

19-These special green areas help people reconnect with ....

a-mature b– natural c– local d–nature

20-Green areas .... the effects of climate change .

a-reduce b– rise c – increase d – raise

21- Green areas provide .... habitats for wildlife.

a-dangerous b– bad c– safe d– miss

22- We work hard to identify ideal .... locations for our Mini Forests.

a-ban b-urban c– village d- town

23-We always use .... -growing native trees .

a-fast b- last c– past d- slow

24- We follow effective forest management methods developed .... experts.

a-with b – on c – of d– by

25-We collect .... from every forest to understand the effects.

a-dates b-data c– pineapples d– apples

26- We need more volunteers to...................... the mini forest movement!

a-miss b – go c– lose d- join

27-Click on the link to find .... more .

a-out b – up c– if d– of



Language focus

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات والروتين اليومي:

I visit my cousins every week.

He usually goes to school by bus.

او أي اسم مفرد. He, She, It في نهاية الفعل اذا كان الفاعل S, es, ies لاحظ اننا نضيف حرف

We can use these time expressions to talk about how often we do something:

every day, once a week, twice a (month), three times a (year)

How often……? نستخدم هذه التعبيرات الخاصة بالوقت للإجابة علي سؤال

How often do yoy go to the club?

I go to the club twice a week.

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb to talk about the frequency of the

action.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل وبعد الفاعل لنذكر مرات التكرار الخاصة بالفعل.

We always work hard to identify ideal urban locations.

I don't often see my school friends at weekends.

We use How often …? to ask about the frequency of an action.

للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الحدث او الفعل: How often نستخدم

How often do you work in the community garden?

I work there two afternoons a week

ابدا	نادرا	أحيانا	أحيانا	غالبا	دائما
never	rarely	sometimes	often	usually	always
0%	10%	50%	70%	80%	100%

PRONUNCIATION

/θ/ thank math thing tenth	/s/ sank mass sing tense

Exercise on Grammar :

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- What .... your uncle do?
a-has b– do c– are d – does
2- My sisters always .... to school together.
a-goes b–will go c– go d-going
3-- Who .... this mobile belong to?
a-do b– does c– has d– have
4- This bunch of flowers often........................... me a lot of money.
a-cost b– will cost c– costs d– costing
5- How .... do you go to the theatre ? Once a year .
a-often b– old c– long d– much
6-I sometimes .... football with my friends.
a-play b– plays c– played d– playing
7- She........................... to music every day.
a-listen b– listens c– listened d– listening
8- My mum never .... football matches on TV.
a-watching b– watch c– watches d– will watch
9- Their uncle always .... in Cairo.
a-live b– living c-lived d– lives
10- Every day we .... our breakfast at 7.00.
a-has b– having c– have d– to have
11-........................... you always listen to music on your mobile?
a-Are b– Have c– Do d– Does
12- My sister is ill so she .... to hospital .
a-go b– went c– goes d-going
13- Does your father .... football matches on TV ?
a-watch b– watched c– watching d– watches
14-My sister........................... likes sports.
a-don't b– doesn't c-never d– isn't
15- Ice .... in the sun .
a-melt b– melts c– will melt d– melted
16 – This tablet belongs .... my sister.
a-to b– for c– with d– on
17-It .... rains on the desert.
a-always b– rarely c– usually d– often
18– Computer studies........................... interesting .
a- is b – are c– were d– have
19- My mother .... up early every day.
a-always get b-gets always c-always gets d-get always
20- The sun .... in the east .
a-will rise b– is rising c– rises d– can rise

Test on unit 1:

1-Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Wael is in ....
a-Scotland b-Paris c-New York d-London

2-He was there with his ....
a-family b-friends c-brothers d-sisters

3- His apartment block is on the floor
a-fifteenth b- sixteenth c-seventeenth d-eighteenth

4-His flat has a ....view.
a-terrible b- scary c-dangerous d-great

2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-How..................do you go to the club?
a-always b-usually c-rarely d-often

2-Hany .... plays football. He doesn't like sports.
a-always b-usually c-rarely d-often

3- We.........................go to school on Fridays.
a-always b-never c-rarely d-often

4- He usually .... to school by bus.
a-go b-gone c-goes d-going

3-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

grow - market - volunteers - roof - watch

The community garden is a big green space. It's on the.................... of my Aunt Salma's apartment block. The people who work there are all...................... from the neighborhood. We............................... vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the................................, too!

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

A giant has a beautiful garden where children come to play every afternoon. However, the giant doesn't want to share his garden and builds a wall around it. The garden becomes empty and silent, and everything turns brown. The giant doesn't understand why his garden is not beautiful anymore. One day, he hears a little blue bird singing outside and children laughing. He sees that the children have come back through a hole in the garden wall and are sitting in the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again, and flowers are opening around them.

The giant feels happy to see his garden grow again, but in one corner of the garden, it is still winter. A tiny boy is standing there.

A-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- What is the name of the story?
a-. The Generous Giant b- The Selfish Giant
c- The Kind Giant d- The Greedy Giant

2- The giant feels ....to see his garden grow again.
a-sad b- bored c- happy d-angry

3- The giant doesn't want to share his garden and builds a ....around it.
a-well b- wall c- hall d-ball

B-Answer the following:

4-Why did the garden become empty and silent?

....

5-What did the giant do when he saw the children playing in his garden?

....

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1- hard- urban – We – to – work – ideal – locations – always – identify.

....

2- out – the little – He – helps – and – boy – goes.

....

3- the park – People – socializing - a lot – and – for – use – sports.

....

6-Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets:

1-He......................(live) near the park.
2-We..................... (aren't) go to school on Fridays.

7- Punctuate the following:

alexandria is much quieter than new york

....

8- Write a text of about (50) words using the following guiding elements:

Egyptian food (full of vitamins - tasty food)

....
....
....



Review on unit 2- We are all different

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
buddy	صاحب – رفيق	calm	هادئ	textbooks	كتاب مدرسي
recess	راحة	polite	مؤدب	organized	منظم
nervous	متوتر	messy	فوضوي	worksheets	أوراق عمل
shy	خجول	clever	ماهر - ذكي	idea	فكرة
map	خريطة	gymnasium	صالة للألعاب الرياضية	experiments	تجارب
spaceship	سفينة فضاء	series	مسلسل	Hare	أرنب
claws	مخالب	independent	مستقل	well-being	سعادة - رفاهية

Exercise on Vocabulary:

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-Let's .... for a walk outside

a) going b) went c) go d)goes

2-You can stay with me ....recess.

a-on b-at c-of d-out

3- I feel a bit nervous and .... as I don't know anyone here.

a-boring b– kind c– shy d– late

4- Don't worry .Stay .... We are all very friendly.

a-kind b– good c– bored d– calm

5- He is very clever and he is good .... maths.

a-for b– at c– with d– for

6- Welcome .... Egypt .

a-of b-to c-with d-out

7- I love my teacher because he is ....

a-unkind b– cruel c-unfriendly d-polite

8- Your things are thrown everywhere . You are ....

a-messy b-tidy c-polite d-kind

9- I have an extra .... of the worksheet.

a-cup b-copy c-cope d-cart

10-Wow You are really ....

a-bored b– boring c– organised d-unkind

11-Sarah is very .... She always helps people.

a-nice b – bad c– sad d– unkind

12- Take .... to answer the teacher's questions.
a-round b– turns c– place d– to

13-What does your father.......................like ? He is friendly.
a-like b– look c– take d– make

14- My father has a strong ....
a-person b– people c– personality d– parson

15- We are proud ....our new , modern building.
a-of b- off c– to d – on

16- These laboratories have all the equipment to ....experiments.
a- make b – play c– do d– put

17- We can play football in the ....
a- lab b– playground c– class d– movie

18-There is a ....if you feel thirsty .
a-fan b – fun c– fountain d – mountain

19-There are also ....to sit on under the trees.
a-benches b – umbrellas c– fountains d– fans

20- The building is the where you can find computer classes.
a-It b – AI c- USA c-UN

21- There are some teachers who run ....sports clubs.
a-away b – over c– into c-after

22- *Wandaland* is .... TV series.
a- fan b– fantasy c – fanatic c – fun

23- *Wandaland* is popular .... people of all age group.
a- with b– of c– to c– for

24 - He thinks perhaps his family is still ....
a-life b– alive c– live c– lived

25- My sister is ....She is worried about talking to people.
a-brave b– shy c– boring c– bored

26- He is .... He speaks carefully and correctly , shows respect.
a- boring b– exciting c– polite c– shy

27- To ....is to make something better than before.
a- improve b – prove c – play c – do

28-To ....is to make more.
a- decrease b– reduce c- increase c– catch)

29-To.. is to make less.
a-decrease b – rise c- increase c – catch

30-Our teacher is......................... He is nice and helpful .
a- lazy b– unkind c– cruel c– kind

31- Hare likes eating ....
a-meat b– fish c– carrots c– chicken



Language focus

We use -ed adjectives to describe how a person feels.

تستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي ب ed لوصف شعور شخص ما.

I am excited! She is interested in science.

We use -ing adjectives to describe people or things that give us feelings.

وتستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي ب ing لتصف الشخص او الشئ الذي يعطينا إحساس ما.

The football game is exciting. This TV show is really interesting.

We use who, which, and where to give more information about a particular person, thing, or place. We use these words for both singular and plural nouns.

نستخدم من ، وما ، وأين لنعطي مزيدًا من المعلومات حول شخص أو شيء أو مكان معين. نستخدم هذه الكلمات لكل من الأسماء المفردة والجمع.

We can use who to talk about people.

Mr Sergany is the teacher *who* runs the football club.

We can use which to talk about things.

These are the shoes *which* I wear to school.

And we can use where to talk about places.

This is the building *where* we do physical education.

Remember when we use who, which, or where, we don’t need to repeat the subject of the sentence.

تذكر عندما نستخدم من أو أي أو أين ، لا نحتاج إلى تكرار موضوع الجملة.

Mr Sergany is the teacher. Mr Sergany runs the football club.

Mr Sergany is the teacher *who* runs the football club.

PRONUNCIATION

The letter “u” makes the sound /ʌ /	The letter “a” makes the sound /æ/
Sun – run – fun – gun – cut – hug - rug	Sad – man – fan –dad – bad – can - class



Exercise on Grammar:

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Dalia is the girl .... sits next to me in the English class.
a-which b– who c– where d– when

2- An ostrich النعامة is a big bird .... can't fly.
a-which b– who c– where d– when

3- This is the street .... my uncle lives.
a-which b– who c– where d– when

4-I really love the red flowers .... we grow in our garden.
a-which b– who c– where d– when

5- The supermarket is the place .... we buy food.
a-Which b– who c– where d– when

6- Hany is a boy, in my class , ... has a pet lizard.
a-which b– who c– where d– when

7- These are the class computers............................ we use them.
a-which b– who c– where d– when

8- Bees are insects .... make honey.
a-which b– who c– where d – when

9- A pharmacy is a shop............................ you can buy medicine.
a-which b–who c – where d– when

10- That is another classroom............................ we have science lessons .
a-which b– who c– where d– when

11- Leila is the tall girl .... has red hair.
a-which b– who c– where d– when

12- *Wandaland* is a fantasy TV series .... is popular.
a-which b– who c – where d– when

13-This is a world .... humans live .
a-which b– who c– where d – when

14-It tells the story of a boy .... wants to return to Earth .
a-which b– who c– where d– when

15- He hides on a spaceship .... is travelling to Earth.

a-which b – who c– where d– when

16- June is the month .... I was born.

a-which b– who c– where d– when

17- He is poor............................ he is happy .

a-and b– so c– but d– because

18- Maha is beautiful .... I don't like her .

a-and b– but c- so d– because

19- Saturday is the day .... we go to school.

a-which b– who c– where d– when

20-It's .... as it takes place in the future on a planet .

a-interested b- bored c– interesting d-bad

21- Hi Fareeda, I'm ....to see you!

a-surprised b– surprising c– boring d- bored

22- The children feel ....when there is nothing to do.

a-bored b– boring c– amazing d-fit

23- His birthday party was ....

a-excited b– exciting c– bored d-interested

24- I'm really .... in Ancient Egypt.

a-interested b– interesting c– bored d-boring

25- I was really .... last night.

a-tired b– tiring c-amazing d-surprising

26 -The results of the students' last test are ....

a-bored b-excited c-surprised d-surprising

27- We want to go to the beach .... we don't have swimsuits.

a-but b-and c-so d-as

28- Lizards make good pets .... it's dif cult to find food for them.

a-but b– and c– so d– as

29- My new school is great.................................. it's far from my house.

a-but b– and c– so d– as

30- Dalia is polite and clever.......................................she isn't friendly.

a-but b– and c-so d-as

Test on Unit 2

1-Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The…………………….. building is our new gymnasium.

a-white b– black c– yellow d– red

2- We use it during Physical Education ………………………

a-texts b– lessons c– boxes d– thinks

3- There are some teachers who run …………………….. school.

a-after b– before c– during d– next

4- We use gymnasium ……………. basketball, handball, and gymnastics.

a-to b– in c– at d– for

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d::

1-Your …………………… is a student who helps you get to know the school

a-teacher b-buddy c-father d-son

2- Mr Sergany is the teacher …………………….. runs the football club.

a-when b-where c-which d- who

3-……………………..means intelligent, good at school work.

a- shy b- messy c-clever d- nervous

4- The children feel …………………….. when there is nothing to do.

a- bored b- boring c-exciting d-interesting

3-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

world - market - because - age - planet

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series. It is popular with people of all ……………….groups. It's interesting …………………………it takes place in the future on a ……………….called Wanda. This is a ……………….which humans live because the Earth is now too hot.

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

Hare is hungry and goes home to eat some carrots. When she gets to her house, she hears a noise inside. She calls out, but a voice warns her not to come in or the animal will eat her. Hare is scared and runs to get her friend Monkey for help. Monkey and Hare go back to the house, but the voice warns them away again. They run to get Elephant for help. Elephant is confident that he can defeat the animal, but when he sees that it is a small mouse, he runs away in fear. Hare, Monkey, and the mouse all laugh at Elephant's reaction.



The moral of the story is that even the biggest and strongest animals can be afraid of something small and seemingly insignificant. It is also a reminder that we should not judge others based on their appearance.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-Hare asked her friend Monkey ....help.
a-at b- for c- by d-of

2- Elephant is confident that he can ....the animal
a-eat b- drink c- defeat d-play

3-We should not ....others based on their appearance.
a- judge b- ask c- think d-watch

Answer the following:

1- What does Elephant do when sees the mouse ?

....

2- What is the moral of the story?

....

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1- very – all – We – friendly – are.

....

2- favorite – Cats – my – are – animals.

....

3- on – to – benches – There – the – are – trees – also – sit – under.

....

6-Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets:

1- Bees are insects..................(who) make honey.

2- This is the street ....(which)my uncle lives.

7- Punctuate the following:

don t worry, stay calm

....

8- Write a text of about (50) words using the following guiding elements:

A day with your friends in the school (happy day - gymnasium)

....

....

....

....

....

....



Review on unit 3 - Vacation plans

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
vacation	أجازة	quad biking	دراجة رباعية	carnival	كرنفال
Palace	قصر	minaret	مئذنة	trip	رحلة قصيرة
activities	انشطة	explore	يستكشف	sunset	غروب الشمس
credit card	بطاقة إئتمان	discount	تخفيض	heights	مرتفعات
disappoint	يحبط	incredible	غير معقول	secret	سر
realistic	واقعي	simulation	محاكاة	fantasy	خيال
destination	وجهة	monastery	دير	brochure	نشرة - منشور

Exercise on Vocabulary:

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I'm really excited ....our vacation.
a-of b – on c– out d- about

2- Let's plan some ....for this trip.
a-activities b- acting c– reactions d– action

3-Good idea! There are lots of things to ....in Cairo.
a-make b– do c– give c- bring

4-Should we ....the museum first ?
a-visiting b– to visit c-visit c– be visited

5-On Monday we can ....photos at the Manial Palace .
a-take b– give c– bring c– do

6-You can go ....biking in the desert!
a-quick b– quit c– quiet c– quad

7-There's a ....in Giza City. I like taking part in it .
a-carnival b– crop c – cart c – carrot

8-Let's go there and ....on a rollercoaster .
a-write b– ride c– read c– lie

9-Yes, that sounds amazing. But how do we get ....Giza City?
a-at b– with c– out c- to

10-There are buses from Cairo. If we ....now, we're sure to get seats.
a-look b– take c -book c– see

11-Okay. Here's a bus ....that goes to Giza City on Tuesdays.
a-company b- camp c– court c– car

12-The first bus leaves at ten o'clock ....the morning.
a-on b– in c– at c– with

13-How long does it ....? -About 30 minutes.
a-look b– give c- arrive c–take

14-It says it arrives ....Giza City bus station at 10:30 am
a-in b – on c- at c- of



15-Okay, let's ask my dad to book the bus ....
a-chairs b– benches c– tickets d– cards
16-What ....do you want to do?
a-else b- too c– also d– as well
17-Should we go ....biking the next day, on Wednesday?
a-quak b– merit c– quad d– mine
18-Let's climb the Bab Zuweila ....
a-minaret b– merit c– quad d– mine
19-We can watch the ....over the city at 6:30 pm
a-sunrise b– sunshine c –sunset d– sunhat
20-We can ....the souks near the minaret.
a-cover b– explore c– get d-arrive
21-Divide your study time into ....of about 30 minutes.
a-sets b-sits c-sessions d-seasons
22-If you ....to study for hours and hours, you can't concentrate.
a-fly b– try c– fry d– cry
23- She wants to .... her family happy.
a-let b – make c–do d– give
24-Fatima decides to .... her fear of heights.
a-see b– watch c– face d– lose
25 - The average --------------you can drive a car at in Egypt is 90 kilometers per hour .
a) fast b) speed c) slow d) quick
26 -A Boeing 747 airplane has four -------------------- , two on each wing.
a) passengers b) tails c) engines d) wheels
27 -When clouds cool down they ---------------- raindrops onto the earth.
a) release b) decrease c) increase d) reduce
28 -The ------- of an object is how much matter there is in an object, measured in kg
a) mass b) miss c) Miss d) must
29- Sharm el-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt....................the Red Sea.
a-in b– on c-by d– at
30-She feels proud .... live in such a fantastic place .
a-of b–to c- about d– on
31-Suddenly she doesn't feel ....any more .
a-scary b– scare c– to scare d-scared
32- Today is my birthday and guess where I ....
a-is b– are c– am d– were
33- I'm with my family for my special birthday ....
a-surprise b- surprising c– surprised d– amazing
34-When you arrive ....the park you are suddenly in a fantasy world.
a-in b-at c– to d– on
46-There are .... rides to try like the rollercoaster.
a-amazed b– amaze c– amazing d– amazingly
38-We have tickets .... the *Waterfalls* and the *Raging River*.
a-to b– on c– with d-for
39- It's a bit .... and you get very wet!
a-scare b–scary c– scared d-afraid
40-In the afternoon Dad and I want to go to the .... theater.





a-similar b– same c– some d– simulation

41- A blog post should have a title and a ....
a-palm b– palm date c– date d– data

42- in a blog post we use .... language .
a-formal b– informal c– format d– form

43- Bloggers add photos to make their blogs more ....
a-nice b – good c– bad d– attractive

44 - I am going to visit St Catherine's ....
a-monastery b– monster c– master d– mystery

45- We can .... quad biking in the desert .
a-visit b– go c– make d– play

46- Make a tourist .... about the place you visit.
a-book b– notebook c – brochure d– butcher

Language focus

We use clauses with if or when plus present tense verbs, or a modal verb like can, to talk about facts.

تستخدم الحالة الصفرية من If / when مع الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن الحقائق.

If we go by bus, it is quicker.
When you book online, you can also choose which seats you want.
The clause with if/when can come at the start of the sentence, or at the end. When it comes first, we separate the two clauses with a comma.

عندما تبدأ الجملة ب if / when نفصل بين الجملتين بعلامة الكوما.

If you press the button, the tablet switches off.
The tablet switches off if you press this button.
In questions, the clause with if/when usually comes at the end.

عند تكوين السؤال غالبا مايأتي الجزء الخاص ب if / when في النهاية.

How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?
Does your aunt always cook feteer when you visit her?

Language focus

We use prepositions of time at, on, and in, to say when something happens.

We use at with times:تستخدم مع الأوقات:

at midnight,at eight o'clock,at lunchtime

We use on with days and dates:تستخدم مع التواريخ:

on Friday,on my birthday,on August 17th

We use in with months, seasons, and years:تستخدم مع الشهور والفصول والسنين:

in August,in summer,in 2023





PRONUNCIATION

/ w / as I wow – wine - wick	/ v / as in vow – vine - vick
white – worm - went – walk - with - - wolf - wearing - watch.	visit - very - village – vintage - violin – vegetables - volcano

Exercise on Grammar :

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- If you leave ice in the sun , it ....
a-melt b– melts c– melted d– melting

2- When you are standing still , you .... a lot of potential energy .
a-had b– has c– having d-have

3- If you ....walking , your kinetic energy increases.
a-started b– starts c– will start d-start

4- If you start running , your kinetic energy ....
a-increase b– increasing c– increases d-lose

5- If we throw wood in water , it ....
a-floats b– floated c– is floating d– will float

6- When we put a stone in water , it ....
a-will sink b– sink c– sinks d– is sinking

7- If we don't water plants , they ....
a-die b– dies c– will die d– would die

8- If we heat metals , they ....
a-expanded b– will expand c– would expand d– will expand

9-If I am tired , I usually ....to bed .
a-go b – went c– am going d – will go

10- When we mix yellow and red , we ....blue.
a-will get b– get c– gets d– would get

11- We celebrate Sham El-Nessim.............................. spring.
a-in b– on c – at d– of

12- Let's meet outside the school ....10:30 am.
a-in b– on c– at d– of

13 -We had a science class ....Monday.
a-in b– on c– at d– of

14 -They went on a trip to the Red Sea ....July.
a-in b – on c– at d– of

15 -Great news! I'm having a party ....my birthday!
a-in b– on c– at d– of

16 -What did you do ....the weekend?
a-in b– on c– at d– of

17-Hana does homework.............................. Tuesday.





a-in b– on c– at d– of

18-I get up ....7 o'clock.

a-in b– on c– at d– of

19- I like to go to the sea ....sunset.

a-in b– on c– at d– of

20-My mother gets up early ....the morning.

a-in b– on c– at d– of

Test on unit 3 :

1-Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Little Deer runs on through the ....

a-Jungle b-street c-forest d-road

2- He comes to a large ....

a-river b- puddle c-stream d-sea

3- It isn't .... like the lake.

a-red b- white c-green d- blue

4- But Little Deer is very............................ now!

a- thirsty b- hungry c-happy d- tired

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d::

1- Active people always wake up .... dawn.

a-in b-on c-at d-of

2- If we put wood in water , it ....

a- float b- floating c- floated d- floats

3- You can go........................ biking in the desert!

a- play b- quad c- run d- eat

4- My English always............................ if I study the lessons again at home.

a- gets better b- getting better c- get better d- got better

3-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

watch - try - do - shows - world -

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a ....of fantasy – it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and .... here. There are amazing rides to ....like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch..............................

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

Dalia comes to visit her cousin Fatima in Aswan. She wants to see all the famous places. She wants to visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. Fatima has a secret. She is afraid of heights. She can't climb the hill up to dome. She decides to face her fears and go with her cousin. They go there and they reach the top. Fatima is





scared, but Dalia helps her to breathe slowly and takes her hand. She feels calmer and enjoys the incredible view.

2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-The view from the top is. ....
a-incredible   b- bad   c- ugly   d- noisy

2 -Dalia comes to visit her cousin in. ....
a- Cairo   b- Luxor   c- Aswan   d- Tanta

3 -Fatima decides to face her. ....
a-bears   b- heights   c- teachers   d- fears

Answer the following:

1-Where does Fatima live?

....

2-What is Fatima's secret ?

....

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1- plan – for - Let's – some - the trip – activities.

....

2- to – and – There - a lot – here – see – do – is.

....

3- places – visiting – I – new – love.

....

6-Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets:

1- They went on a trip to the Red Sea......................(at) July.
2- If you ....(finds) my book, please call me.

7- Punctuate the following:

samer s mom prefers to sit next to the window.

....

8- Write a paragraph of about (50) words using the following guiding elements:

■ Where is the place?   ■ What can you do there?

............'s blog	BLOG HOME	ABOUT ME	LINKS	ARCHIVE
....				
....				
....				
....				
....				
....				
....				



Review on unit 4 - CELEBRATE GOOD TIMES!

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
streamers	اشرطة الزينة	decorating	يزين	fireworks	العاب نارية
scissors	مقص	invitations	دعوة	string	خيط
free time	وقت فراغ	documentary	فيلم وثائقي	revision	مراجعة
cycling	ركوب الدراجة	already	بالفعل	history	تاريخ
candles	شمع	guest	ضيف او نزيل	USA	الولايات المتحدة الامريكية
adults	بالغ او راشد	noodles	مكرونة او شعرية	Britain	بريطانيا
Celebration	احتفال	community	مجتمع	confirm	يؤكد
event	حدث	attend	يحضر	formal	رسمي

Exercise on Vocabulary :

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d::

1 -I'm hanging .... the streamers for my sister, Nessma's party.
a-on b– at c– of d- up

2 -Will you pass me the ...., please ? I want to cut the string.
a-scissors b– cup c– spoon d – salt

3 -I am .... the streamers together.
a-tearing b – tying c– trying d– typing

4 -Can you .... up the balloons to hang them ؟
a-put b– play c- blow d– buy

5 -they are .... the birthday cake.
a-decorating b – tying c– building d– coming

6 -When the light goes out , we light some............................. .
a-candy b – candles c– cards d– cuts

7-Please .... these invitations to our friends
a-sell b– see c–send d– have

8 -I am sending everyone email .... to attend the party.
a-invention b – venture c– invitations d– vet

9 -Dalida .... a playlist for my party on her phone.
a-did b– made c– put d– read

10 -We need an adult to let .... the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark.
a-on b– of c– off d– out



11 -To .... means to want or dream of something.

a-play b– wish c – wash d– watch

12 -............................. is a white powder for making bread and cakes.

a-Flour b– Floor c– Flower d – Frying

13 -I invite you to our school's .... celebration this year .

a-day b– week c– month d- annual

14-We are organizing a special day for the event () Friday October 15.

a- in b– at c- on d – of

15-As well ....students and teachers, we are inviting other people .

a-so b– as c– to d– off

16 -We very much hope you can .... our birthday party.

a-intend b–attend c– give d– take

17 -Please reply by August 31 to .... if you can come.

a-come b– income c- confirm d– firm

18 – We are going to .... our father's birthday tomorrow.

a-celebrate b- finish c– have d– take

19 -We add water to the flour to make it ....

a-melt b– freeze c – stick d– leave

20-Pulling the ear is something ....

a-painful b– helpful c– useful d – careful

21- The reason .... his illness is unknown.

a-in b– of c– for d– with

Language focus

We use can or will when we ask friends or family to help us. We often add please at the end of the request:

نستخدم can أو will عندما نطلب من الأصدقاء أو العائلة مساعدتنا. غالبًا ما نضيف من فضلك في نهاية الطلب: ويسمى الطلب بطريقة مهذبة:

Can you show me the photos?
Will you feed the cat, please?
Dad,can you take me to school, please?

Language focus

We use the present continuous to talk about actions in progress around now with time phrases like this week, at the moment, and today:

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن الإجراءات الجارية حاليًا مع عبارات الوقت مثل هذا الأسبوع ، في الوقت الحالي، واليوم:

ويتكون من الفاعل ثم (am / is / are) ثم الفعل مضافا له (ing):

Subject + am / is / are + V.ing

She's *studying* for her exams this week.
They *aren't enjoying* their vacation.

عند تكوين سؤال بهل نقدم (Is / Are) علي الفاعل:

Are you *playing* football this year? Yes, I *am*. / No, *I'm not*.
Remember! We also use the present continuous to talk about actions that are happening at the moment of speaking:

تذكر! نستخدم أيضًا المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الأفعال التي تحدث في لحظة التحدث:

What *are you doing*, girls? We'*re helping* to make the birthday cake.
We also use the present continuous to describe things that are happening in a picture.

نستخدم المضارع المستمر أيضًا لوصف الأشياء التي تحدث في صورة.

What are Noha and Dalida doing there?

PRONUNCIATION

a – e تنطق /ei/ as train – ate - gate	e / ea تنطق /e / as bed – head - shed
Wait – stay - cake	Bread – ledge - get

Exercise on Grammar :

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d::

1-She is .... Lunch now.
a-cook b-cooks c-cooking d-cooked

2 –What are .... you at this moment?
a-do b– doing c– does d- did



3 –Look ! she .... a picture.

a-draw b– is drawing c– drew d– draws

4 -What are your parents .... now؟

a-do b– does c– doing d– did

5 – They .... a football match at the moment.

a-are watching b– watch c– will watch d– watched

6 -................................ your father mending his car at the present.

a-Is b– Are c– Was d– Were

7 -Listen! Amr ....

a-sings b– sang c– is singing d– was singing

8 -Watch out : The bus ....

a-is coming b– came c– comes d– was coming

9 -Now I .... a project about technology.

a-do b– did c– am doing d – have done

10-Look : Mr Ahmed .... some questions.

a-is writing b– write c– will write d- writes

11 -My father is .... on the farm now.

a-works b– worked c– is working d – has worked

12 -The mechanic .... my car at present.

a-mends b- mended c– mending d– is mending

13-The architect is .... buildings.

a-design b– designed c– is designing d- designing

14 -We are .... for exams at the moment .

a-study b– studying c– studied d– will study

15 Will you .... me your book , please؟

a-give b – giving c- gives d- gave

16 -Can you .... the balloon , please؟

a-blow b– blown c– blew d– blowing

17 -................................ you help me hang up the streamers؟

a-Will b– Are c– Did d– Does

18 -Don't let your sister .... out alone.

a-goes b– to go c– go d– went

19-I will help you hang .... the streamers.

a-of b– up c – down d– off

20 – who can let .... the fireworks?

a-of b– off c – up d– on





Test on unit 4 :

1-Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I am writing to invite you to our school's .... Day Celebration.
a-father's b-broter's c- Mother's d-sister's

2- We are organizing a .... day.
a-normal b-special c-boring d-long

3- We are inviting people from the .... community.
a-local b-national c-international d-outside

4- We very much hope you can ....
a-go b-travel c-stay d-attend

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d::

1- I think the tools are in the ....
a-head b-bed c-shed d-wood

2- What .... Ali doing at the moment?
a-am b-is c-are d-was

3- I'm also .... on the weekends with my dad.
a-cycle b-cycles c-cycling d-cycled

4- We use.......... language when we speak or write to people we don't know.
a- formal b-informal c-information d-slang

3-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

breath - market - blow - snacks - includes

Children everywhere like party food. This often ....small cakes, sandwiches, and .... In many countries, children like to ....out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one...................!

4- Read and answer the questions:

Some countries have different birthday food. In China people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life. And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are ten, a Chinese child is eleven.

2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- In China people like to eat long .... or peaches on their birthday.
a-candles b- noodles c- flowers d-candies

2-The underlined word" peaches " is a kind of...................

a-vegetables b- candies c- fruits d-drinks

3-Chinese people are ……………………older.

a-never b- often c- sometimes d-always

Answer the following:

1- What do Chinese people like to eat on their birthdays?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

2- Why are Chinese people often older?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1- streamers – hang up – the – you – Will – me – help ?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

2- a special – We – day – organizing – are.

……………………………………………………………………………………………

3- in – the - What's – weather – Cairo – like?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

6-Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets:

1-She…………………(are) studying for her exams this week.

2-I'm ……………………(practice) for the football game.

7- Punctuate the following:

Yes they are

……………………………………………………………………………………………

8- Write an email of Sixty (50) words to your friend Omar to invite him to your birthday your name is Mahmoud and your email address is omarmahoud@gmail.com. Your friend email address is ali@gmail.com.:

From:	
To:	
Subject:	

………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………

Review on unit 5 - Amazing Journeys

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
diary	مفكرة يومية	voyage	رحلة بحرية	century	قرن 100 عام
vacation	إجازة	imagine	يتخيل		
explorer	مستكشف	experiences	خبرات		
Almost	بالكاد	triangular	الثلاثي	axes	محاور
discovery	اكتشاف	complicated	معقد	civilization	الحضارة
artifacts	الآثار	incredible	رائع	inspiration	إلهام
sculptures	منحوتات	archaeologists	علماء الآثار	The Ife	إيفي
advanced	متطور - متقدم	advanced	متقدم	mystery	غموض

Exercise on Vocabulary :

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 -Marco Polo went on a long............................ by sea.
a-trip b–voyage c- tour d– tourism

2 -He sailed .... from Venice to Korcula.
a-in b– by c– for d– with

3 -Marco Polo .... a camel all the way to China.
a-rode b– travelled c– walked d – went

4 -My father wrote a .... about his experiences in China.
a-dairy b– day c– diary d– dates

5-The museum had a lot of .... from ancient China.
a-subjects b– verbs c– adjectives d– objects

6 -We went to Dahab .... a week with my parents.
a-in b– on c– by d– for

7 -Antarctica is a continent where it is always very, very ....
a-cold b– hot c– warm d– not cold

8 -When the weather is ...., the lake turns to ice.
a-hot b– warm c– melting d– freezing

9- In the desert, it's warm in the sun but .... in the shade.
a-cold b– hot c– cool d– warm

10 -Winter in Egypt isn't very cold. The weather is ....even in December.
a-cold b – hot c– cool d– warm

11 -The rocks in Death Valley are so .... you can cook an egg on them.



a-cold b– hot c – cool d– warm

12 -What .... of animals can you see in the photos؟

a-tyre b-type c – tape d– tip

13-The child is afraid of the .... because it can bite him.

a-snack b – hen c– chicken d – snake

14 -The .... is a huge sea animal with sharp teeth.

a-snake b– lizard c– crocodile d – turtle

15-The .... carries its home on its back..

a-snake b– lizard c– crocodile d – turtle

16-Archaeologists found beautiful .... in the tomb.

a-arts b– artifacts c- facts d– work

17-These artifacts were beautiful .... sculptures.

a-clay b- mud c– water d–butter

18-A team of .... went to the area to find out artifacts.

a- vets b – archaeologists c– nurses d– doctors

19 -To find .... means to discover.

a-in b– out c– of d– about

20-The museum is full of beautiful ....

a-sculptures b – cotton c– butter d – cartoon

21 -We use .... to cut trees and wood.

a-axes b – scissors c– spoons d– forks

22 -The .... is a landscape where nothing lives.

a-wastes b– waste c– wasteland d – waterwheel

23 -A .... is a bad dream.

a-watchman b– nightmare c– night d– software

24-He was .... by the sand dunes.

a-fascinated b– fascinating c – surprising d– interesting

25 -The dromedaries live in the .... moved slowly.

a-caravan b- carts c– carriage d– sea

26 -The tree is .... in the wind .

1-snowing b – sliding c– saying d– swaying

27 -You can't grow plants in the ....

a-land b– fertile land c– wasteland d– field

28-By day , the desert is boiling ....

a-hot b– cool c– warm d– cold

29-By night , the desert is .... cold.

a-boiling b - heating c– freezing d– snowing

30- There were many strange .... about this desert.

a-legends b– mystery c– dromedary d – sand



Language focus

We use the past simple to talk about finished actions, or situations, in the past.
نستخدم الماضي البسيط للحديث عن أفعال أو مواقف منتهية في الماضي.

We usually include a time phrase (yesterday, last week, three years ago) with the past simple, but not always. Some common verbs are irregular in the past simple, for example be, go, find, have, and make:
عادةً ما نقوم بتضمين عبارة زمنية (أمس، الأسبوع الماضي، منذ ثلاث سنوات) مع الماضي البسيط، ولكن ليس دائما. بعض الأفعال الشائعة تكون غير منتظمة في الماضي بسيطة، على سبيل المثال :

(be) Almost 100 years ago there was a very surprising discovery.
(go) Archaeologists went to the area to find out more.
(have) They had unusual triangular eyes and complicated hair styles.

The form of past simple verbs is the same with all subjects, apart from be which has two forms:
شكل الأفعال الماضية البسيطة هو نفسه مع جميع او أي فاعل، باستثناء فعل يكون له شكلين:

I/he/she/it → was   you/we/they → were

To make the negative form of most past simple verbs, we use didn't + the infinitive without to:
لصياغة صيغة النفي لمعظم الأفعال الماضية البسيطة، نستخدم didn't + المصدر بدون to:

We didn't have a vacation this year.

To make questions in the past simple we use Did + subject + the infinitive without to:
لطرح الأسئلة بصيغة هل في الماضي البسيط نستخدم Did + subject + صيغة المصدر بدون to:

Did Dalida find her book? Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

We don't use did with the negative or question forms of be in the past simple:
لا نستخدم did مع صيغ النفي أو الاستفهام في الماضي البسيط اذا فعل الجملة الأساسي هو فعل be:

Was she happy in New York? - No, she wasn't happy there.

PRONUNCIATION

/dʒ/ as in huge and fridge	/ʒ/ as in measure and treasure
age aridge jump	usually television decision

Exercise on Grammar :

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d::

1- I didn't .... her yesterday.
a-see b- saw c- seeing d- seen

2 -How did you .... to the park؟

a-gone b – go c– went d- going

3 -There .... some milk at the floor 5 minutes ago.

a-was b– is c – are d- were

4 -Where .... you go the other day؟

a-do b– can c– will d– did

5 -They didn't .... their friends last month.

a-met b– meeting c– meet d- meets

6-Sara went .... last week.

a-shop b– shops c – shopping d– shopper

7-Last week we .... them some presents.

a-give b– gave c – given d– giving

8-Did you .... a good weekend؟

a-make b– go c– have d– read

9 -I .... my brother to work yesterday.

a-drove b– rode c– ate d– bought

10 -I didn't .... my friend yesterday.

a-meet b– meets c– met d– meeting

11 -When I .... eight years , I learnt how to swim.

a-was b – were c – did d– had

12-After school . I went home and .... my lunch.

a-have b– having c– had d – eat

13-When .... you born؟

a-did b– were c – was d – are

14 -What did Your brother .... the other day.

a-bought b– was buying c– buy d – buys

15 -Why didn't you .... the birds an hour ago؟

a-feed b– feeding c– feeds d – fed

16 -We should get .... the train before it leaves the station.

a-on b– into c – onto d– of

17-This is your destination . You should get .... here.

a-on b– off c – onto d– into

18-what would you like ....

a-having b– have c– to having d– to have.

19 -Once , there .... a cruel king who punished a lot of people.

a-is b– was c – were d– are

20 -Nasser .... The High Dam.

a-builds b– is building c– has built d– built



21 -I .... a nice avenue to remember my holiday in London..
a-buy b– bought c– buying d– buys

22 -We .... out last night.
a-went b– going c– are going d – go

23-When I was young , I .... in the sea every day.
a-swimming b– will swim c– can swim d-swam

24-I .... to the bookshop yesterday.
a-go b– went c– am going d– will go

25-Where did you .... my lost mobile؟
a-found b – find c – finding d – have found

26-How .... you go to school yesterday ? I rode my bike to school.
a-do b– doing c– did d- done

27 – She .... some medicine at the chemist's two hours ago.
a-buys b- bought c – buy d – is buying

28 – I .... to the hotel to book a room last week.
a-went b– is going c – will go d-go

29 – I .... a camel yesterday.
a-ride b– riding c– rode d – can ride

30 -Where did you .... yesterday evening؟
a-went b- gone c – going d– go

31 --Fares .... angry with his brother yesterday .
a-was b – were c– are d– is

32-- We .... a great time at the carnival two days ago.
a-having b – has c- had d- have

Test on 5 :

1-Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- We stopped to see some .... things along the way.
a-boring b-excited c- incredible d-normal

2- The pyramids were ....
a-huge b-small c-low d-little

3- The stones of the pyramids were a sort of .... color.
a-silver b-golden c-wooden d-black

4- I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the .... time in my life.
a-first b-second c-third d-fourth





2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d::

1-……………………….Dalida find her book? -Yes, she did.

a-Does b-Do c-Did d-Is

2-Almost 100 years ago there ………………. a very surprising discovery.

a-is b-was c-are d-were

3- The archaeologists……………………….. many old tools.

a-find b-finds c-finding d-found

4- …………………………..is an example others use to help create new ideas.

a- inspiration b-clay c-discovery d-advanced

3-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

kilometers - found - roof - advanced- farming

A team of archaeologists went to the area to find out more. They ……………………many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of …………around Nok. There were also iron and stone ……………..tools .The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very ………….culture.

4- Read and answer the questions:

Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no water.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold – sometimes there was snow. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still …

2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- There were many …………………………legends about this desert.

a-usuall b- normal c- strange d-ordinary

2- The ……………………….. made strange noises.

a-water b- wind c- camels d-hot

3-It was a mysterious and ……………………..place.

a-happy b- safe c- dangerous d-pleasant

Answer the following:

1- How is the weather in this place?

……………………………………………………………………………………

2- Why is that place mysterious and dangerous place?

……………………………………………………………………………………



5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1- of – styles – The sculptures – many – were – different.

....

2- on – year – My family – went – last – vacation.

....

3- with – No, - uncle - wasn't – my – I.

....

6-Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets:

1-She.....................(are) studying for her exams this week.

2-What are you ....(do), girls?

7- Punctuate the following:

the ship didn t leave the port

....

8- Write a text of about (50) words using the following guiding elements:

Write a diary entry about a trip.

- how and when you went there
- what the weather was like

....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Review on unit 6-

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
instructions	تعليمات	Squeeze	يعصر	popsicle sticks	عصي المصاصة
wax	الشمع	drops	قطرات	press	يضغط
palm trees	أشجار النخيل	wick	فتيل	stir	يقلب
depended	يعتمد	barley	شعير	herbs	اعشاب
lentils	عدس	combinations	مجموعات	preserve	يحفظ
How many	كم عدد	few	قليل من معدود	little	قليل من غير معدود
How much	كم كمية	many	كثير من معدود	much	كثير من غير معدود
some	بعض	a lot of	كثير من	quantity	كمية

Exercise on Vocabulary :

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Here are the instructions for ……………………the candles .

a-eating b– doing c– giving d – making

2- We use ……………………to make candles.

a-wood b– wax c– metal d– wool

3- We get wax from the Egyptian ……………………tree . It is really nice.

a-palm b– calm c– lamb d – bomb

4- You should use some nice ……………………before going out .

a-reform b– perform c– perfume d– fume

5- We should keep each ……………………of water .

a-drop b– drip c– draft d–craft

6- I will ……………………this sponge to get rid of its water .

a-have b– give c– squeeze d– quiz

7- ……………………this button to make the machine work .

a-Pass b– Press c– Dress d– Increase

8- The cotton little rope inside the candle is called ……………………

a-wet b– wit c– nut d– wick

9-We need some popsicle ……………………to hold the wicks up in the glasses

a-sticks b– starch c– glass d– palm

10-Children like eating ……………………as a sweet .



a-pops b– pickles c– lollipop d– cheese

11- Add sugar to the tea and use the spoon to ……………………it .

a-stir b – star c– stare d– store

12- ……………………the wax to make it melt .

a-Cool b– Heat c– Hot d – Hat

13- The king always wears a ……………………on his head .

a-crown b– corn c– colour d– carrot

14- The ……………………which the king holds in his hand is beautiful.

a-scepter b– sculpture c – scoot d– steam

15- The queen is sitting in her nice ……………………

a-thorn b– throne c– thread d – silk

16- To clean our teeth, we use ……………………

a-toothpaste b– hairbrush c– minerals d– incense

17- The king lives in a beautiful ……………………

a-palace b– hut c – flat d– apartment

Language focus

We use How many …? to ask about quantities of countable things, like leaves, lemons, cars, or people. We can reply to the question with a number (a/an/ one, five, twenty), or an approximate amount (some, a few, a lot).

نستخدم كم...؟ للسؤال عن كميات الأشياء المعدودة، مثل أوراق الشجر، الليمون أو السيارات أو الناس. يمكننا الرد على السؤال(a/an) (او برقم واحد، خمسة، عشرين)، أو مقدارًا تقريبيًا (بعض، قليل، كثير).

How many lemons do we need for the lemonade?

We need five lemons. / We need a few lemons.

We use How much …? to ask about quantities of uncountable things, like tea, sugar, oil, or grass. We can only reply to this question with an approximate amount (some, a little, a lot).

نستخدم كم...؟ للسؤال عن كميات من الأشياء التي لا تعد ولا تحصى، مثل الشاي أو السكر أو الزيت أو العشب. لا يمكننا الرد على هذا السؤال إلا بشكل تقريبي (بعض، قليلا، كثيرا).

How much oil do we need? -We need a little oil.

Remember, we use There is / There are and some / any to talk about quantities too.

There are some girls from Luxor in my class.

There aren't any tigers in Egypt. Are there any lemons?.

Exercise on Grammar :

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 – .... sweets have got nuts and dates in them.
a-Many b– Any c-Much d-little

2 – Have you got .... meat in the fridge ?
a-some b – an c– any d– a

3 – What .... you like to eat? .
a-would b– are c – is d – were

4 – .... there any sweet thing to eat ?
a-Have b– Are c– Is d– Were

5 – There are four .... on the table .
a-apples b– water c– bread d– soup

6 – We've got lots .... vegetables.
a-of b– off c– on d- for

7 – There .... any salt in the salad .
a-is b– isn't c– aren't d- was

8 – How much .... do you need ?
a-salt b– apples c– bananas d-onions

9 – We've got .... spaghetti
a-any b– some c– an d-two

10 – How .... onions are there ?
a-old b– many c– much d-long

11 – Our teacher gave us .... good advice.
a – an b – the c– no article d-a

12- Would you like .... tea ?
a-some b– a c– any d– the

13- Everyone .... to have desserts after meals.
a-like b – liking c– likes d– have liked

14- There .... some milk in the fridge .
a-is b- are c– has d– have

15- .... there any boys in the class ?
a-Is b– Was c– Has d– Are

Test on unit 6:

1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Peter looks carefully at the………………….. again.

a-picture b- painting c-board c-wall

2- He can see crown and ………………

a-sowrd b- pencil c- scepter c-arrow

3-The king was ……………………….

a-eating b- playing c- sitting c-missing

4-The sceptre is leaning towards the …………………of the little young princess.

a-hand b- head c- leg c-arm

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d::

1-……………………that's the little cotton rope inside the candle.

a-wax b-wick c-flower d-oil

2- How…………………… boys are there in the class today ?

a- much b- many c- long d- often

3- What is the ……………………….. of this dish?

a- recite b- receipt c- recipe d- receive

4- Egypt is famous ………………….. its spices

a-on b-to c-of d-for

3-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

better - market - jars - spices - dried

Some families also knew how to use …………………and herbs to make their cooking Taste…………………., and they also knew how to preserve food. For example, they ……………………fish or used salt to preserve it, and used …………………to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

Some of the ancient recipes for deodorants are quite strange! One method was to mix an ostrich egg with some nuts, the crushed shell of a tortoise, and a little oil, then put this mixture on your body. Another recipe recommends mixing fruit juices with spices like cinnamon and pepper to make a liquid to cover any bad smells.

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush – a stick with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end. The ingredients of their toothpaste were a mint, rock salt, pepper, and dried iris flowers. They put this dry powder directly onto their teeth and rubbed it with their toothbrushes.

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.





2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Ancient Egyptians used an ostrich egg to make ....
a-toothpaste b- perfume c- deodorants d-drink

2-To make toothpaste they change ingredients into.....................
a-liquid b- powder c- dust d-mud

3-The Ancient Egyptians made mint...............................
a- candies b- sticks c- boxes d-plants

Answer the following:

1- What did Ancient Egyptian make to keep their mouths fresh?

....

2- Mention two recipes for deodorants.

....

5- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1- do – How – oil – need – much – we?

....

2- mint – Egyptians – candies – Ancient – made.

....

3- my – some – There – girls – Luxor – in – class – are – from .

....

6-Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets:

1- How ....(much) candles do you have?
2- There are ....(any) girls from Luxor in my class.

7- Punctuate the following:

oh yes And we need some popsicle sticks

....

8- Write an email of (50) words to your friend Mona to tell her about spices in Egypt your name is Ola and your email address is ola@gmail.com. Your friend email address is mona@gmail.com.:

Guiding elements: famous for- sold in stores

From:	
To:	
Subject:	

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....





Listening Texts

Test on Unit 1

Wael is in New York for a year with his family. His apartment block is on the sixteenth floor, so it has a great view.

Test on Unit 2

Frey wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring.

Test on Unit 3

I am writing to invite you to our school's annual celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Friday October 15 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend

Test on unit 4 :

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Friday October 15 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Test on unit 5 :

We stopped to see some incredible things along the way too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life – they were awesome! The pyramids were huge and the stones were a sort of golden color.

Test on unit 6 :

Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see crown and scepter, but there's no king. And the scepter is leaning dangerously towards the head of the little young princess! He must go and find the missing king at once.

حمل الآن

مجانا وحصريا

المراجعة رقم (5)







Unit 1 & 2 Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1 & 2

المفردات الإضافية

aid	مساعدة	leaves	أوراق الشجر
alive	على قيد الحياة	lettuce	خس
apartment block	مبنى سكنى	logo	شعار
art works	أعمال فنية	local residents	السكان المحليون
benches	مقاعد	messy	فوضوى
borrow	يستعير	mini	مصغر
calm	هادئ	miss	يفتقد
chemicals	مواد كيمائية	mountain	جبل
claws	مخالب	nervous	متوتر / عصبى
community	مجتمع	neighborhood	حي
competition	مسابقة	natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعى
court	ملعب	noisy	صاخب
data	بيانات	organic	عضوى
dates	بلح	organization	منظمة
equipment	أدوات	organized	منظم
experiments	تجارب	pass through	يمر عبر
effects	تأثيرات	pet	يدلل - يلاطف
Earth	كوكب الأرض	physical education	التربية الرياضية
fantasy	خيال	planet	كوكب
forest	غابة	polite	مؤدب
fountain	نافورة	porridge	عصيدة (أكلة شعبية في أسكتلندا)
foreign	أجنبي	project	مشروع
fur	فرو	railway line	خط السكة الحديد
giant	عملاق	roof	سطح
gym (gymnasium)	صالة ألعاب رياضية	scared	خائف
gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز	Scotland	اسكتلندا
hare	أنثى الأرنب البرى	Scottish	اسكتلندي
harvest	يحصد	selfish	أناني
hang out	يتجول / يتسكع	share	يشارك
hole	حفرة	sharp	حاد
independent	مستقل	shy	خجول
information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات	species	فصائل / أنواع
intelligent	ذكي	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
laboratory	معمل	textbooks	الكتب الدراسية
large	كبير	theater performance	أداء مسرحي



Unit 1 & 2

المفردات الإضافية

the countryside	الريف	view	منظر
tiny	صغير الحجم	weather	الطقس
Tombs of the Nobles	مقابر النبلاء	website	موقع إلكتروني
urban	حضري	worksheets	ورق تدريبات
village	قرية	worried	قلق



1/2 General exercise

on unit 1 & 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. They love working in the .... garden. It is a big green space on the roof.
   a) society b) community c) block d) street
2. To get organic food, we use natural ....
   a) tools b) gardens c) chemicals d) fertilizer
3. They are .... They take no money.
   a) teachers b) doctors c) farmers d) volunteers
4. I like to eat vegetables and fruits which are organic with no ....
   a) chemicals b) leaves c) roots d) dates
5. " .... " are the people who live in a neighborhood.
   a) Kids b) Classmates c) Local residents d) Foreigners
6. There's someone here, I can hear his ....
   a) voice b) clothes c) books d) face
7. " .... " means to go from one place to another.
   a) Miss b) Pass through c) Relax d) Describe
8. There's a .... near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.
   a) minaret b) souk c) palace d) railway line
9. Cats have .... claws and teeth. Don't make them angry.
   a) soft b) dull c) sharp d) blunt
10. My sister is .... Her books are on the floor.
    a) calm b) shy c) messy d) nervous
11. He always says please and sorry. He is ....
    a) nervous b) messy c) polite d) unfriendly
12. You shouldn't be .... Share your toys with your friends.
    a) beautiful b) selfish c) kind d) nice

13. If a new student is .... , we should help him make new friends.

ⓐ nervous ⓑ clever ⓒ polite ⓓ kind

14. Hani is very .... He shows respect to everyone.

ⓐ polite ⓑ messy ⓒ lazy ⓓ organized

15. My school has a water .... , which is nice to touch.

ⓐ mountain ⓑ fountain ⓒ dry ⓓ yard

16. All students love the .... lessons because they can play football in the playground.

ⓐ math ⓑ English ⓒ science ⓓ physical education

17. Cats have soft ....

ⓐ claws ⓑ fur ⓒ teeth ⓓ eyes

18. The place where we do experiments is ....

ⓐ Library ⓑ Playground ⓒ Laboratory ⓓ Hall

19. Animals which we can live with are ....

ⓐ Bats ⓑ Birds ⓒ Pets ⓓ Bites

20. Omar is .... and kind . we love him .

ⓐ bad ⓑ terrible ⓒ friendly ⓓ ugly

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

caretaker - adult - slow - Clever - messy - late

People are very different. (1) .... people are intelligent and good at work. Sometimes, children can't do lots of things, so they need an (2) .... to help them. A person who takes ages to finish a book is called a (3) .... reader and the person who looks after and cleans a building is called a (4) ....

foreign - wildlife - volunteers - New - organization

Mini Forest is an (1) .... which helps small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our (2) .... , like plants. We never grow (3) .... plants in our projects. We rarely have (4) .... to help us in planting.

friendly - walk - fur - teeth - walking

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft (1) .... which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually (2) .... They like (3) .... but they are independent. We don't need to take them for a (4) .... every day.

home - laboratories - playground - gate - grade

My school is near my house. It's big and clean. It has two (1) .... where we have science lessons. I play football and basketball in the (2) .... with my friends. I'm in (3) .... five. I love Mrs Nora who teaches me English. I have three English lessons a week. I go (4) .... at two o'clock, and have lunch with my family.

3 Read the text and answer the questions :

We should work hard for our environment. People and wildlife need nature most. So, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests. Mini Forest plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. That helps people enjoy nature and help our wildlife - like plants, animals and other living things. We also work with local communities to plant and look after our forests over time.

We pick up data from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife and climate of the area. We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mini Forest .... small areas of trees in our cities.

ⓐ prefers ⓑ rains ⓒ harms ⓓ plants

2. The underlined word "pick up" means " ....

ⓐ leave ⓑ join ⓒ collect ⓓ link

B. Answer the following questions :

3. How does Mini Forest help people? ....

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ....

5. How does collecting data about Mini Forest help?...

My name is Hana. I'm finally in Scotland. Our apartment is on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and making friends, so there's always something to see there. Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A lot of Scottish people eat ....

ⓐ Ful medames ⓑ porridge ⓒ milk ⓓ honey

2. Egyptian food is .... than the Scottish food.

ⓐ farther ⓑ smaller ⓒ better ⓓ worse

3. the apartment is on the .... floor .

ⓐ first ⓑ second ⓒ third ⓓ fourth

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where is Hana? ....
4. What do people do at the park? ....

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly, They like people but they are independent , so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being , too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea is about ....

ⓐ dogs ⓑ horses ⓒ cats ⓓ lions

2. the cats make you ....

ⓐ happy ⓑ sad ⓒ angry ⓓ bored

B. Answer the following questions :

3. How are cats independent animals ? ....
4. when do cats use it`s sharp claws and teeth ? ....





Grammar

The Present Simple

المضـــــــــــارع البسيـــــــــط



usage الإستخدام

يستخـــدم المضـــارع البسيـــط للتعبير عن
(عــــادة / حقيقة علمية ثابتـــة / مواعيد ثابتـــة)

Form التكوين

he / she / it / مفرد	التصريف الاول للفعل + s / es / ies	باقـــي الجملة
I / we / you / they / جمع	التصريف الاول للفعل بدون إضافات	باقـــي الجملة

EXAMPLE



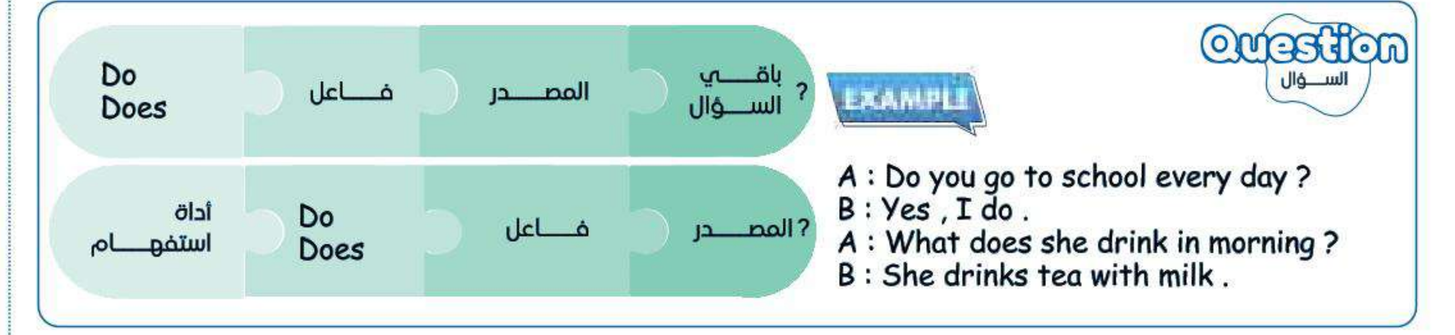
- Mona cooks food every day .
- He plays video games every day .
- I always eat ful for breakfast .
- Ali often goes to school library .
- We always travel to Alexandria in summer .

Negative النفـــي

he / she / it / مفرد	doesn`t	المصـــدر	باقـــي الجملة
I / we / you / they / جمع	don`t	المصـــدر	باقـــي الجملة

EXAMPLE

- Mona doesn`t cook food every day .
- He doesn`t play video games .
- I don`t eat ful for breakfast .
- Ali doesn`t go to school library .
- We don`t travel to Alexandria .



Question الســؤال

Do / Does	فـــاعل	المصـــدر	باقـــي الســؤال ?
أداة استفهـــام	Do / Does	فـــاعل	المصـــدر ?

EXAMPLE

A : Do you go to school every day ?
B : Yes , I do .
A : What does she drink in morning ?
B : She drinks tea with milk .



Key words الكلمات الدالة

تستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل (بعد verb.to.be) للتعبير عن مدي تكرار الفعل .

Always	Usually	Often	Sometimes	rarely	Never
دائما	عادة	غالبا	احيانا	نادرا	أبدا

تستخدم تعبيرات الوقت ايضا في زمن المضارع البسيط

every day / once (a week) / twice / three times ......



Notes لاحظ

للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الفعل نستخدم How often

A : How often do you go to the club ?
B : I go to the club twice a week .



Grammar

Relative pronouns :

ضمائر الوصـــــــــل

usage الإستخدام

تستخـــــــدم ضمائــــر الوصــــل (who / which / where) لربط جملتين وعدم تكرار الجزء الذي يحل محله ضميرالوصل في الجملة .

Who (الذي / التي)

تستخدم (who) بمعني الذي / التي للاشارة الي الاشخاص العاقل .

جمـــــلة ← **Who** → جمـــــلة

EXAMPLE
- Dr Ali is the doctor who helps my father .

which (الذي / التي)

تستخدم (which) بمعني الذي / التي للاشارة الي الاشياء الغير عاقل .

جمـــــلة ← **Which** → جمـــــلة

EXAMPLE
- This is the present which my father gave to me .

Where (حيث)

تستخدم (where) بمعني حيث للاشاره الي الاماكـــــن .

جمـــــلة ← **where** → جمـــــلة

EXAMPLE
- A library is my favorite place where I can read books .

عند استخدام ضمائر الوصل لا نحتاج لتكرار الفاعل في الجملة الثانية (نحذف الفاعل ونضيف ضمير الوصل وتكون جملة واحدة)

Adjectives with "ed" / "ing" :

الصفات المنتهيه ب ed / ing

-ed adjectives

usage الإستخدام

تستخـــــــدم الصفات المنتهية ب ed لوصف مشاعر الشخص العاقل .

- The girl is frightened .

-ing adjectives

usage الإستخدام

تستخـــــــدم الصفات المنتهية ب ing لوصف الاشياء والاشخاص المسببة لهذا الشعور .

- The snake is frightening .

" but "

لكـــــن

usage الإستخدام

تستخـــــدم but لربط فكرتين متناقضتين (عكس بعض) وتحويلها لجملة واحدة .

Lizard make good pets	, but	It`s diffcult to find food for them .
Ahmed is very strong	, but	He can`t carry this box .

تسبـــق but ب (,) قبل كتابة الجملة الثانية .





on unit 1 - 2

2 Read and complete the sentences with the correct form of the words between brackets :

1. I'm always on time. I'm .... (sometimes) late.
2. She studies hard, so she .... (never) gets a good grade.
3. We .... (always) walk to school because our school is very far.
4. How often .... (do) Ali do sports?
5. My brother likes dates. He .... (never) eats them.
6. She never .... (eat) unhealthy food.
7. They .... (play usually) computer games on Sundays.
8. My sister and I sometimes .... (plays) in the garden after school.
9. He often .... (reading) magazines in his free time.
10. .... (Do) your friend like studying English?
11. I don't .... (visiting) my grandparents on Fridays.
12. I .... (always) make a cake. I don't like it.
13. How .... (many) does she go to the library?
14. How often .... (do) your teacher give you homework?
15. She .... (cook) food for her family every day.
16. She never .... (eat) unhealthy food.
17. They .... (always are) ready for the exams.
18. She .... (meets always) up with her cousins on Fridays.
19. My father .... (goes always) to work by car.
20. I was so .... (frightening) when I saw the lion.
21. These are the shoes .... (who) I wear to play football.
22. The park is a place .... (who) he flies his kite.
23. Is Magdy the boy .... (which) lives in your building?
24. This is the place .... (which) students study science.
25. An ostrich is a big bird .... (who) can't fly.
26. I was .... (surprising) to see Mr Sherif in the club.
27. The film is .... (interested).
28. Mr Adel is the teacher .... (which) helps me a lot.
29. The book was really .... (interested).
30. Salma .... (don`t) play tennis everyday.



Paragraph on unit 1-2

The community garden
حديقة المجتمع

I and my friends work in a community garden . It's on the roof of an apartment block . We grow vegetables and fruit for people in the local area . The community garden is a good idea because the plants help to clean the air . The community garden project is a good place to make new friends . There are a lot of plants and trees . we harvest a fresh fruit and vegetables like eggplants , apples , cucumbers , carrots and figs . I like to sit on the roof with my friends .

The Mini Forest
الغابـــة الصغيره

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities . This special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife . We always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests . We never grow foreign plants in our projects . We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area . We don`t use any chemicals with the plants . We use natural fertilizers to have organic crops .

Neighborhood
الحي / المنطقة

I live in amazing city . My apartment is on the sixteenth floor . We have a great view of the city. Our neighborhood has a lot of green spaces . There are many projects to create parks and green areas here . There is a railway line , We have many gardens with different species of plants and trees . The community garden is my favorite place in the neighborhood . I like to walk around in my neighborhood . I play hide and seek with my friends in my neighborhood .

cats
القطط

My favorite pet is the cat . Cats are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch . They're clean and calm animals .They are usually friendly . They like people but they're independent . Cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared . When you pet a cat, it makes you happy . I have a white cat in my house .



Unit 3 & 4 Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 3 & 4

المفردات الإضافية

English	Arabic
adventures	مغامرات
attend	يحضر
bear	دب
blow out	ينفخ (يطفئ الشمع)
blow up the balloons	ينفخ البالونات
brave	شجاع
breath	نفس
birthday cards	بطاقات عيد الميلاد
carnival	مهرجان ترفيهي
celebrate	يحتفل
celebration	احتفال
character	شخصية
climb the Bab Zuweila minaret	تسلق (يصعد إلى مئذنة باب زويلة)
company	شركة
confirm	يؤكد
costume	زي تنكري
credit card	بطاقة ائتمان
deer	غزال
destination	وجهة
details	تفاصيل
dome	قبة
discount	خصم
disappoint	يخيب الأمل
documentary	فيلم وثائقي
dust	غبار
email address	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني
event	حدث
explore the souks	يستكشف الأسواق
exams	امتحانات
fear	خوف
figure out	يكتشف
flame	لهب
formal	رسمي
freezer	الفريزر
fire	نار
go quad biking in the desert	يركب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء
guests	ضيوف
hang up the streamers	يعلق الشرائط
hard	بجد
heights	ارتفاعات
helmet	خوذة
hill	تلة
history	تاريخ
indoors	في الداخل (بالمنزل)
instructions	تعليمات
let off the fireworks	يطلق الألعاب النارية
local community	المجتمع المحلي
make a playlist	يعد قائمة تشغيل الأغاني
Manial Palace	قصر المنيل
monastery	دير
monument	أثر تاريخي
Mother's Day	عيد الأم
Museum	متحف
noodles	شعرية
ocean	محيط
Orient Train	قطار الشرق
present	هدية
realistic	واقعي
reply	يرد
ride on a rollercoaster	يركب قطار الملاهي
roof	سطح
scissors	مقص
screens	شاشات
secret	سر
selfish	أناني
send the invitations	يرسل الدعوات
square	ميدان
stream	نهر صغير

Unit 3 & 4

المفردات الإضافية

string	خيط	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
take photos	يلتقط صورا	vacation plans	خطط لقضاء العطلة
theme park	مدينة الملاهي	visit the Manial Palace	يزور متحف قصر المنيل
tickets	تذاكر	waterfalls	شلالات



3/4 General exercise

on unit 3 & 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are amazing .... to try like the rollercoaster.
   a) groups b) rides c) flights d) tickets
2. After a long time, we arrived at our ....
   a) destination b) pollution c) population d) information
3. I like going to the .... to ride the rollercoaster.
   a) beach b) desert c) theme park d) museum
4. Fatima .... to face her fear and climbed up the hill.
   a) divided b) provided c) decided d) guided
5. You look tired. You need to ....
   a) cycle b) play c) relax d) let
6. The ancient mosque has a very high ....
   a) cinema b) minaret c) company d) mountain
7. Let's .... the Bab Zuweila minaret.
   a) climb b) jump c) arrive d) plan
8. The .... ride is very scary and you get wet.
   a) deserts b) mountains c) caves d) waterfalls
9. He is afraid .... heights.
   a) to b) of c) on d) at
10. We need an adult to let off the ....
    a) cakes b) balloons c) fireworks d) streamers
11. We use .... language when we speak or write to strangers.
    a) Informal b) bad c) formal d) dirty
12. People make mint tea for .... in their homes.
    a) guests b) thieves c) animals d) birds

13. The word celebration means ....

ⓐ party ⓑ game ⓒ invitation ⓓ experience

14. To "blow .... " is to send air through your mouth.

ⓐ out ⓑ in ⓒ of ⓓ for

15. We can ask Ahmed to .... a playlist.

ⓐ send ⓑ make ⓒ bang ⓓ blow

16. We let off .... on my birthday. It was amazing.

ⓐ fireworks ⓑ toys ⓒ streamers ⓓ invitations

17. Are you .... forward to the party to see my friends?

ⓐ cycling ⓑ putting ⓒ looking ⓓ making

18. I am writing to .... you to our school's Mother's Day celebration.

ⓐ invent ⓑ discover ⓒ invite ⓓ describe

19. We are wearing .... in the party.

ⓐ costumes ⓑ celebration ⓒ fireworks ⓓ invitation

20. Hala is sending .... to her friends to attend the party.

ⓐ inventions ⓑ decorations ⓒ fireworks ⓓ invitations

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

blew - decorated - amazing - invitations - dark

Last week was my sister's birthday party. It was in our garden. The party was (1) .... and my sister was very happy. We all helped my sister. My mother (2) .... the birthday cake. I sent the (3) .... All her friends came and gave her presents. My brother (4) .... up the balloons. My father hung up the streamers.

monastery - camels - Red - biking - food

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the (1) .... Sea. Many tourists like to visit it because there are a lot of things they can do. Tourists can quad (2) .... in the desert. They like visiting St. Catherine's (3) .... They also like riding on (4) .... and relaxing at the beach.

book - rode - shows - popcorn - tired

Amr and his sister Huda went to the carnival on Monday. They (1) .... on the rollercoaster. Amr ate (2) .... and a burger. Huda drank lemonade and ate an apple. They watched many exciting (3) .... They were (4) .... when they went home.

football - cycling - relax - indoors - exercises

Ahmed is studying hard for his exams. He doesn't spend all his time (1) .... He goes outside, and he (2) .... He goes running in the morning. He goes (3) .... with his dad at the weekends. He also sees his friends a few times a week. He also visits his grandparents. Ahmed knows that it's important to (4) .... and have fun sometimes.

3 Read the text and answer the questions :

Amal comes to visit her cousin Fatima in Aswan. She wants to see all the famous places. She wants to visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. There is a great view from there. Fatima has a secret. She is afraid of heights. She can't climb the hill up to dome, but she doesn't want to disappoint her cousin. She decides to face her fears and go with her. They go there and they reach the top. Fatima is scared, but Amal helps her to breathe slowly and takes her hand. She feels calmer and enjoys the incredible view.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Fatima is afraid of ....

ⓐ snakes ⓑ dogs ⓒ heights ⓓ cats

2. The underlined word "incredible" means ....

ⓐ bad ⓑ fantastic ⓒ big ⓓ calm

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where does Amal want to go? ....

4. Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....

My name is Ola. Today is my birthday. I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster, and theaters where you can watch shows. In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater where we can sit in our seats with big screens all around us and there are sound and light effects, and we feel like we're in different places around the world - snowy mountains, even under the ocean. It's very realistic.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

ⓐ Ola's birthday surprise at the Carnival
ⓑ Ola's family
ⓒ The amazing rides
ⓓ The simulation theater

2. Dad and Ola want to go to the simulation theater in ....

ⓐ the morning ⓑ the evening ⓒ the afternoon ⓓ night

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What can we do at the Carnival? ....
4. Why is the simulation theater very realistic? ....

Birthday <u>celebrations</u> are not the same everywhere. In Egypt, we make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. In Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family: their mom and dad!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "celebrations" means ....

ⓐ games ⓑ parties ⓒ candles ⓓ travels

2. In .... , the candles are left to burn.

ⓐ Brazil ⓑ India ⓒ Egypt ⓓ USA

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do they do in Brazil in birthday? ....
4. What do children like in birthday? ....





Clauses with " if / when "

الجمل مـــــع " if / when "



تستخــــــدم if الحالة الصفريـــــــة للتعبير عن الحقائق العلمية الثابتة والعـــادات
ويمكن استخدام can في الجمل التي تأتي بعد " if / when "





, جمـــــلة مضـــارع بسيـــط
تصريف اول للفعل بإضافة s /es / ies لو الفاعل مفرد
والمصدر لو الفاعل جمع او I / we / you / they

If / when



- **If** you heat the water , it turns into steam .
- **If** you look at the website , you can find the information .

يمكن أن تأتي If في منتصف الجملتين بدون (,)

- The laptop turns off **if** you press the button .

يمكن تكوين سؤال مع قاعدة if ويكون السؤال في بداية الجملة في زمن المضارع ويأتي بعدة جملة If .

جمـــــلة مضـــارع بسيـــط
تصريف اول للفعل بإضافة s /es / ies لو الفاعل مفرد
والمصدر لو الفاعل جمع او I / we / you / they

If / when

ســـــؤال مضـــارع بسيـــط
Do / Does + فاعل + مصدر
اداة استفهام + Do / Does + فاعل + مصدر

- Where does she go **when** she has a vacation ?

Preposition of time

حـــــروف جر الخاصـــة بالوقت



تأتي حروف الجر الخاصـــــــــــــــة بالوقت (in / on / at) قبل الكلمات الخاصة بالوقت
كالشهور والساعات والايام وهكـــــــذا .

at

تأتي مع :

- الســــــــاعات

9 pm - 11 o`clock

- الاحتفـــــالات

Christmas

- الوجبـــــــات

Lunchtime - breakfast

- باقي الفترات

noon - night - midnight
midday - dawn

on

تأتي مع :

- أيـــام الاسبوع

Friday - Saturday

- الايام المميـــزة

Birthday

- التاريخ الكامـــل

July 3rd - April 17th

- بعض العبـــارات

Holiday - weekend
time - sunny day

in

تأتي مع :

- الشهــــــــور

January - March - April

- الفصـــــــول

Summer - Winter

- السنيـــــــــن

2012 - 1998 - 2005

- فترات اليـــوم

Morning - afternoon
evening



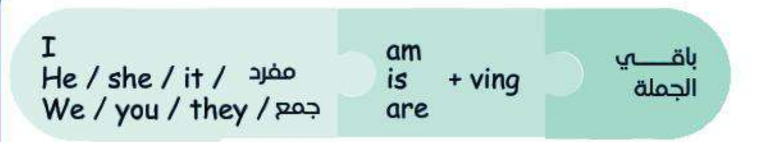
Grammar
on unit 3 - 4

The Present continuous
المضـــــــارع المستمــــــــــر

usage الإستخدام 

يستخـــدم المضـــارع المستمـــــر للتعبير عن
- الاحداث الجارية الان (وقت الكلام) .
- الاحداث الجارية حول أو بالقرب من وقت الكلام (مثل هذا الاسبوع / هذا اليوم أو اللحظة) .
- لوصـــــف الاحداث التي تحدث في صورة .

Form التكوين 



I He / she / it / مفرد We / you / they / جمع	am is are	+ ving	باقـــي الجملة





- He is letting off the fireworks now .
- Mona is blowing up the balloons at the moment .

ملحوظـــــــــــــــــــــــات عند إضافة (ing)
- عندمـــا ينتهي الفعل ب e غير منطوق , تحذف e قبل إضافة ing
- عندمـــا ينتهي الفعل بساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الساكن قبل إضافة ing
- لا يضاعف إذا سبق الحرف الساكن حرفين متحركين .
- عندمـــا ينتهي الفعل ب ie تحول ل y ثم نضيف ing

Negative النفـــي 



I He / she / it / مفرد We / you / they / جمع	am not isn`t aren`t	v + ing	باقـــي الجملة



- He isn`t letting off the fireworks now .
- Mona isn`t blowing up the balloons at the moment .

Question الســـؤال

Am Is are	فـــاعل	v+ ing	باقـــي الســـؤال ?
أداة استفهـــام	Am Is are	فـــاعل	v+ ing ?

EXAMPLE

A : Are you reading a book now ?
B : Yes , I am .
A : What are you drinking ?
B : I am drinking tea with milk .

Key words الكلمات الدالة

تستخدم بعض الكلمــــــات في الجمل لتدل علي وقت حدوث الفعل (وقت الكلام)

This + (time)	today	now	at the moment
هذا	اليوم	الان	في تلك اللحظة





Exercises on Grammer
on unit 3 - 4

1 Read and complete the sentences with the correct form of the words between brackets :

1. I always go to the park .... (in) Saturday mornings.
2. I usually go to Alexandria .... (on) summer.
3. .... (Does) you buy a new dress if you have a party?
4. The museum is a good place to go .... (in) the weekend.
5. He was born .... (at) March.
6. .... (On) lunchtime, I like to watch TV.
7. How can we .... (getting) to Luxor if we miss the train?
8. You can .... (calls) me if you need any help.
9. What happens when you .... (pressed) this button?
10. I stay home if I .... (was) ill.
11. If he .... (press) the button, the machine works.
12. When you .... (had) regular breaks, you remember more.
13. We don't go to school .... (at) summer.
14. He likes to listen to music .... (in) midnight.
15. My father arrived .... (in) six o'clock yesterday.
16. I got many presents .... (at) my birthday.
17. Dad was born .... (at) November 1982.
18. We went to Alexandria .... (on) train.
19. He was born .... (at) March.
20. If you heat sugar, it .... (melted).
21. If you .... (doesn't) water plants, they die.
22. If we go by bus, it .... (be) quicker.
23. We .... (goes) to the theater to watch a play now.
24. She is studying for her exam .... (last) week.
25. She's .... (do) her homework now.
26. We are .... (cycle) today.
27. The students .... (be) practicing hard for a music concert.
28. Are you playing tennis today? - Yes, I .... (be).
29. Hassan and Nour .... (have) watching a DVD now.
30. My dad is .... (work) in France this year.

How to write informal Email : كيف تكتب دعوة بريد الكتروني بلغة رسمية

- An informal email is a message you write to friends or family.
- An informal email should be friendly in tone, use informal language, and include opening and closing phrases.

رسالة البريد الإلكترون غير الرسمية في رسالة تكتبها إلى الأصدقاء أو العائلة.

رسالة البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمية يحب أن تكتب بأسلونا وديا, وتستخدم لغة غير رسمية وتتضمن عبارات افتتاحية وختامية.

To : عنوان البريد الالكتروني الخاص بالمرسل اليه

From : عنوان البريد الالكتروني الخاص بالمرسل

Subject : الموضوع

Dear .... ,

المقدمـــة

I am writing to invite your to ....
for example (mother`s celebration)

الموضــــــــــــوع

Where it is : ....
when it is : ....
when person has to reply : ....

الخـــاتمة

Please reply ,
yours sincerely ,
التوقيــــع



Paragraph
on unit 3-4

My vacation
اجازتـــــــــي

I love visiting new places, My trip is in Cairol . There are lots to see and do there . I can visit The Egyptian Museum first . Then I can take photos at the Manial Palace Museum for my school project . In Giza, there's a theme park . I can ride a rollercoaster there . It's amazing . There are the pyramids . I can ride the horse and camel . I can take photos with the tourists there .

Sharm El-Sheikh / your city
شرم الشيـــــــخ

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt . It's by the Red Sea . There're lots of things to see and do there , You can swim in the sea . the sea is blue and deep . You can enjoy and relax at the beach . You can visit St Catherine's monastery . You can go quad biking in the desert . in the afternoon , you can go to The Alexandria Library . it is a fantastic place . in the evening , you can go for a walk in the markets and bazaars .

At the Carnival
في المهرجان / الملاهـــــــــــي

At the Carnival, there is a world of fantasy . There's a lot to see and do there . There're amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster . There are theaters where you can watch shows . There are places to eat and stores, too . The children's section has a lot of rides . I went there with my family last month . It was amazing . I went on the water rides . My brother rode the big wheel . We were happy .

To : Faten@gmail.com
From : Mona@gmail.com
Subject : My sister's birthday



Dear Faten ,

How are things? Today is my sister's birthday party . We are getting ready for this party . I'm hanging up the streamers . My mother is decorating the birthday cake . My father is sending the invitations . My cousin is choosing the music . My sister loves the fireworks . We need an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard .

Write soon and tell me your news ,

Mona .

Unit 5 & 6 Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 5 & 6

المفردات الإضافية

archaeologists	علماء الآثار
astonished	مندهش
baking tray	صينية خبز
barley	شعير
cabin	كابينة (مقصورة)
cardamom	الهيل
caravan	قافلة
caretakers	القائمين على الاعتناء بالمكان
century	قرن (100 عام)
civilization	حضارة
clay	طين
combination	خلطة
complicated	معقد
cotton rope	حبل قطني
crown	تاج
culture	ثقافة
diary	مفكرة (مذكرات)
discovery	اكتشاف
drops	قطرات
dromedary	الجمل العربي (ذو السنام الواحد)
exhausted	مرهق
experiences	تجارب
explorer	مستكشف
felucca	قارب شراعي (فلوكة)
festivals	احتفالات
flower petals	بتلات الزهور
frightening	مخيف
go on a journey	يذهب في رحلة طويلة
go on a voyage	يذهب في رحلة بحرية
go on a trip	يقوم برحلة قصيرة
incredible	لا يصدق
incense	بخور
ingredients	مكونات
legends	أساطير
low temperature	درجة حرارة منخفضة
mysterious	غامض
mystery	لغز
palm wax	شمع النخيل
peaceful	مسالم
perfume	عطر
perfume oil	زيت عطري
personal care	عناية شخصية
popsicle sticks	عصا المصاصة
powder	مسحوق
preserve	يحفظ
rosemary	روزماري (نوع من التوابل)
sail by ship	يبحر بالسفينة
sailing boat	قارب شراعي
sand dunes	كثبان رملية
scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)
sculptures	منحوتات
skills	مهارات
soap container	حاوية الصابون
soap crystals	بلورات الصابون
stick	عصا
sway	يتمايل
take a trip	يقوم برحلة قصيرة
theme park	مدينة ملاهي
throne	عرش
telescope	تلسكوب
toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان
toothpaste	معجون أسنان
wasteland	أرض قاحلة (خالية)
waves	أمواج
wax	شمع
wick	فتيل



on unit 5 & 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can explore the .... island.

ⓐ mysterious ⓑ nervous ⓒ bad ⓓ ugly

2. We went on a long .... by sea. We sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula.

ⓐ trip ⓑ voyage ⓒ carriage ⓓ flight

3. " .... " is the art made from stone or wood.

ⓐ Adventure ⓑ Sculpture ⓒ Explorer ⓓ Inspiration

4. Marco Polo used his .... to see the island.

ⓐ microscope ⓑ caravan ⓒ telescope ⓓ nightmare

5. An .... is a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground.

ⓐ engineer ⓑ archaeologist ⓒ carpenter ⓓ guide

6. .... is a type of earth that is sticky when wet.

ⓐ Clay ⓑ Metal ⓒ Wood ⓓ Paper

7. A .... is a group of camels and people traveling together.

ⓐ puddle ⓑ throne ⓒ tour guide ⓓ caravan

8. A .... is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.

ⓐ bus ⓑ car ⓒ train ⓓ felucca

9. Marco Polo wrote a .... about his experiences.

ⓐ diary ⓑ story ⓒ film ⓓ poem

10. Captain Eslam had the .... to sail the felucca.

ⓐ sails ⓑ roads ⓒ oud ⓓ skills

11. The king has a .... on his head.

ⓐ princess ⓑ palace ⓒ crown ⓓ gloves

12. .... are the people who look after and clean a building.

ⓐ Farmers ⓑ Caretakers ⓒ Carpenters ⓓ Plumbers

13. She likes to add .... to her food.

ⓐ spices ⓑ toothpaste ⓒ perfume ⓓ soap

14. " .... " are plants with strong taste often used in cooking.

ⓐ Herbs ⓑ Clay ⓒ Guests ⓓ Noodles

15. .... are the cotton ropes inside the candles.

ⓐ Sticks ⓑ Bottles ⓒ Wicks ⓓ Cartons



16. We need some popsicle .... to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

ⓐ stickers ⓑ sticks ⓒ steam ⓓ star

17. If you .... lemons, you get lemon juice.

ⓐ heat ⓑ stir ⓒ hold ⓓ squeeze

18. The queens live in a/an ....

ⓐ palace ⓑ apartment ⓒ tent ⓓ home

19. You should clean your teeth daily with a/an ....

ⓐ hairbrush ⓑ axe ⓒ spices ⓓ toothbrush

20. Tourists buy .... when they visit Egypt.

ⓐ houses ⓑ souvenirs ⓒ cars ⓓ cats

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

spices - dried - a few - preserve - honey

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt and that means there was (1) .... People used it with bread and cream to make cakes. Some families also knew how to use (2) .... and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to (3) .... food. They (4) .... fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

spoon - bowl - lovely - cooker - add

We need oil, flower petals, and soap crystals to make soap. First, put the ingredients for your soap in a (1) .... Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden (2) .... Heat the ingredients on a (3) .... and take them off the cooker. When the ingredients are hard and cool, (4) .... them into a soap container.

experience - wood - River - captain - sail

Ali had an amazing experience yesterday. He went on a felucca on the (1) .... Nile with his friend Tamer. A felucca is an Egyptian sailing boat which is made of (2) .... They got on the felucca with a captain called Saber. Saber had the skills to (3) .... the felucca. They went slowly down the river and enjoyed the view. It was a lovely (4) .... for them.

dry - fascinated - dunes - wind - move

Marco Polo was twenty-one when he went into the Gobi Desert . He was (1) .... by the sand dunes. Some of the (2) .... were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long. Their shapes were always changing. The (3) .... made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the (4) .... sea" in their language.

humans - archaeologists - information - advanced - tools

The area where the Nok people lived was in Nigeria. People found sculptures in this area, and (1) .... went there to study them . The Nok culture was (2) .... and its people made sculptures from clay, and other farming (3) .... from iron and stone. Their sculptures were usually of (4) .... .These sculptures were beautifully made and had large eyes and hair styles.

rope - wick - candles - bottles - instructions

Ola : What are you doing, Reham?

Reham : I'm making (1) ....

Ola : Can I help you make candles?

Reham : Yes, sure. Here are the (2) ....

Ola : What do we needto help us.?

Reham : Wax, perfume oil and the (3) ....

Ola : What's the wick?

Reham : It's the little cotton (4) .... inside the candle.

2 Read the text and answer the questions :

Here are the instructions for making the candles. First, you need some wax. You can use palm wax that comes from Egyptian palm trees. Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles. You also need some perfume oil. You can use lemon oil. It smells lovely. Squeeze about 40 drops of the oil. You can use flower petals and press them on the top of the candles. First, heat the wax to melt it and stir it well. Put the wax in the glasses. Then, put the wicks inside the glasses. Use popsicle sticks to hold the wicks.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "wicks" means ....

ⓐ wooden sticks ⓑ small bottles ⓒ cotton ropes ⓓ perfume oil

2. The main idea of the text is about ....

ⓐ making candles ⓑ Egyptian palm trees ⓒ flower petals ⓓ palm wax

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where does palm wax come from?

....

4. How many grams of wax do we need to make three candles?

....

One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the royal children - the prince and the princess- are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing ! The scepter of the king was leaning dangerously towards the little princess. So Peter must find the missing king at once.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The king had a .... on his head.

ⓐ princess ⓑ palace ⓒ crown ⓓ scepter

2. The big painting is in the ....

ⓐ kitchen ⓑ living room ⓒ bedroom ⓓ garden

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is strange about the painting?

....

4. Summarize the main idea of the text in two sentences.

....

Marco Polo was twenty one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes which moved with each step the dromedaries made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language. The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the sand dunes.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Local people called the Gobi Desert ....

ⓐ the big tree ⓑ the wet ocean ⓒ the dry sea ⓓ the dark place

2. The underlined word "dromedaries" is a type of ....

ⓐ caravans ⓑ people ⓒ camels ⓓ sand dunes

B. Answer the following questions :

3. When did Marco Polo go to the Gobi Desert?

....

4. Summarize the main idea of the passage in two sentences.

....



on unit 5 - 6

The past simple

الماضـــــــــــي البسيـــــط



يستخـــدم الماضـــــي البسيط للتعبير عن
- حدث حصـــــل في الماضي وانتهي



I He / she / it / مفرد We / you / they / جمع	V2 التصريف الثاني للفعل	باقـــي الجملة

إذا كان فعل منتظم
- يتم إضافـــة d / ed / ied
وإذا كـــان فعل غير منتظم
- يحفظ كما هـــــو



- He played tennis yesterday .
- Mona went to school last week .

ملحوظـــــــــــــــــــات عند إضافة (d / ed / ied)
- عندمـــا ينتهي الفعل ب e نضيف " d "
- عندمـــا ينتهي الفعل ب y ويسبقه حرف ساكن , نحذف y ونضيف " ied " .
- باقي الافعـــــــال نضيف لها " ed " .

أمثلة لبعض الافعـــــــــال الغير منتظمة :

Go	went	have	had	drink	drank
take	took	sleep	slept	make	made
eat	ate	do	did	find	found



I He / she / it / مفرد We / you / they / جمع	didn`t	المصـــدر	باقـــي الجملة



- Ahmed didn`t eat pasta yesterday .
- She didn`t work at the hospital last week .

Question السـؤال

Did	فـــاعل	المصـــدر	باقـــي السـؤال ?
أداة استفهـــام	Did	فـــاعل	المصـــدر ?

EXAMPLE

A : Did you drink the milk ?
B : Yes , I did .
A : What did you eat yesterday ?
B : I ate some noodles .



تستخدم بعض الكلمـــــات في الجمل لتدل علي الماضـــــــــي .

yesterday	last	ago	in the past
أمـــــس	الماضـــي	منـــذ	في المـــاضي
	in 2006	once	when I was young
	في (سنه ماضية)	ذات مره	عندما كنت صغير

Verb (to be) in The past simple

فعل يكون في الماضـــــــــي البسيـــط



I He / she / it / مفرد We / you / they / جمع	Was were	باقـــي الجملة



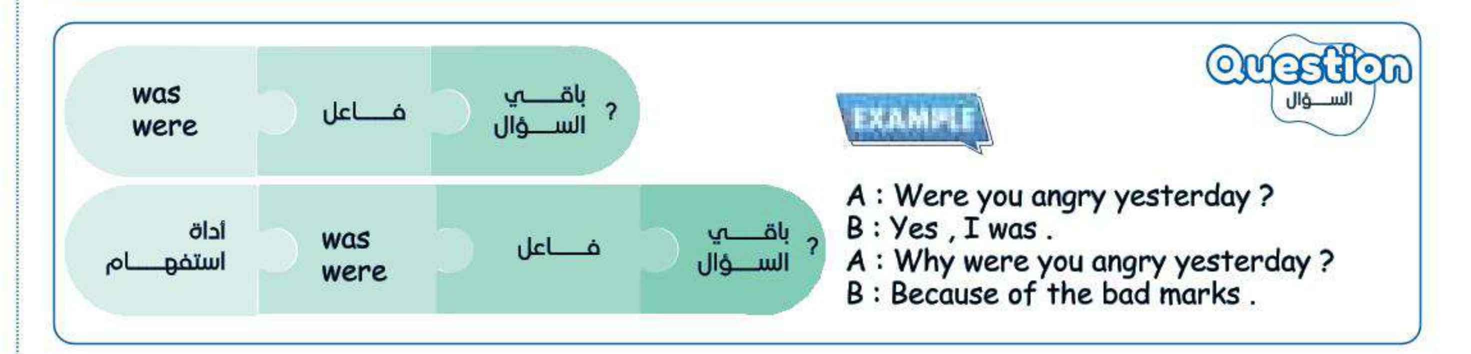
- I was sad yesterday .
- They were excited last week .



I He / she / it / مفرد We / you / they / جمع	Wasn`t weren`t	باقـــي الجملة



- I wasn`t sad yesterday .
- They weren`t excited last week .



Question
الســؤال

was were	فـــاعل	باقـــي الســؤال ?

أداة استفهـــام	was were	فـــاعل	باقـــي الســؤال ?

EXAMPLE

A : Were you angry yesterday ?
B : Yes , I was .
A : Why were you angry yesterday ?
B : Because of the bad marks .

" Adejectives "

الصفـــــات



تستخدم لوصف الإســـــم
وتأتي قبل الاسم أو بعد " be "

- Samy is angry .
- I saw a beautiful girl .
- He like cold weather.

" Adverb "

الحـــــال



تستخدم لوصف الفعـــــــل
وتأتـــي بعد الفعل أو في نهاية
الجملـــــة

- She sings loudly .
- He played well .
- Ahmed eat hungrily





on unit 5 - 6

Countable and uncountable nouns

الاسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد

Countable nouns

- الاسماء التي تعد لها (مفرد و جمع)
- الاسم المفرد الذي يعد يسبق ب (a / an)
- الاسم الجمع ينتهي ب s / es / ies /ves



an apple	apples
a bus	buses
a knife	knives

Uncountable nouns

- الاسماء التي لا تعد ليس لها جمع
- الاسماء التي لا تعد تعمل معاملة المفرد
- الاسم الذي لا يعد لا يسبق ب (a / an)

- rice
- money
- oil
- water
- oil
- honey

Expressions of quantity تعبيرات الكمية

- تعبيرات تأتي مع الاسماء المعدودة

a lot of
كثير من

a few
قليل من

too many
كتير جدا

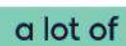
- I need a lot of apples .
- We used a few of pencils .
- She put too many eggs in dish .

- تعبيرات تأتي مع الاسماء غير المعدودة

a lot of
كثير من

a little
قليل من

too much
كتير جدا



- I need a lot of rice .
- We drank a little of juice .
- She put too much sugar in tea .



تستخدم some مع الاسمـــــاء الجمع والاسماء الغير معدودة في الجمل المثبتة .

- She would like to eat some rice and fish .



تستخدم any مع الاسمـــــاء الجمع والاسماء الغير معدودة في النفي و السؤال .

- She wouldn`t like to eat any dried fish .
- Are there any chairs in the room ?



تستخدم للسؤال عن مقدار الاشياء التي تعـــــــد

- How many lemons do you have in the kitchen ?
- I have (one , two , ten , ...)

How much كم كمية

تستخدم للسؤال عن مقدار الاشياء التي لا تعـــــــد

- How much oil do you need ?
- I need a little oil .





Exercises on Grammer
on unit 5 - 6

1 Read and complete the sentences with the correct form of the words between brackets :

1. How .... (many) milk do we have to make cake?
2. There .... (is) any bread. Please, buy some.
3. There aren't .... (some) oranges on the table.
4. We need .... (a little) lemons to make juice.
5. We .... (go) on vacation last month.
6. Did you .... (watched) the match?
7. No, I .... (did) find my lost book.
8. Noha and Gameela .... (make) pizza last night.
9. He didn't .... (went) on the vacation with his family.
10. Noha and Gameela .... (make) pizza last night.
11. He didn't .... (went) on the vacation with his family.
12. Hazem .... (be) angry with his brother yesterday.
13. We .... (have) a great time at the Carnival last week.
14. Did your mom .... (had) a new dress for the party?
15. Where did you .... (found) your books?
16. Did you .... (watched) the match yesterday?
17. A: .... (Were) Ahmed at the club yesterday? B: Yes, he was.
18. A: .... (Were) Ahmed go to the club yesterday? B: Yes, he did.
19. No, I .... (did) find my book.
20. Jana and Yara .... (make) pizza for us last night.
21. She .... (were) sick yesterday.
22. He .... (don't) at the club yesterday.
23. We .... (have) a good meal in that restaurant last week.
24. Where .... (did) you yesterday?
25. She .... (play) football last Friday.
26. How .... (many) sugar do you want?
27. There .... (is) any water in the fridge.
28. How .... (many) milk do you have every day?
29. There is .... (a few) salt in the recipe.
30. There are .... (any) students in your class.





Paragraph on unit 5 - 6

Marco Polo Museum
متحـــــف ماركو بولو

I visited the Marco Polo Museum on my vacation . It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula . It's a really interesting museum all about the travels of Marco Polo . Marco Polo was an Italian explorer . He was one of the first people from the West to visit China . The museum had a lot of things from ancient China . It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life . I liked the museum .

A trip on a felucca
رحلـــــة بالقارب الشراعــــي

Last week, I went on a felucca on the River Nile . A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat . It's made of wood . A felucca is difficult to sail, but the captain was very strong and had the skills to do it . The trip was amazing . We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine . We stopped to see some incredible things along the way . I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life . They were awesome . in the afternoon , we have delicious lunch on board of felucca .

Making candles
صناعـــــــة الشمع

I and my mother want to make candles . We need some wax for making the candles . Palm wax from Egyptian palm trees makes really nice candles . We need some perfume oil . We squeeze in about 40 drops of this oil to make three candles . We can take flowers and press them on the tops of candles . We need one glass and one wick for each candle . We use some popsicle sticks to hold the wick up . We heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well .

Ancient Egyptians' food
الطعام المصري القديم

Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and ate well . Ancient Egyptians ate a lot of vegetables and fruits .They used wheat and barley to make bread .Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat. They probably ate a few fish and birds .They also ate some eggs and cheese .They used honey with bread and cream to make cakes .They also used dates or figs to make fruit drinks .Some families used spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better .

Personal care in Ancient Egypt
العناية الشخصية في مصر القديمة

Ancient Egyptians used many of the products we use today for personal care .They loved strong perfumes . The most popular perfume was kapet . it was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients and some of them was rare . They used a type of toothbrush to clean their teeth . They also had toothpaste . They made mint candies to keep their mouth fresh all day. they mixed cinnamon , melon , pine seeds , and some nuts together with honey to make it .

Revision on Verbs

Conjugation of verbs

الأفعـــال

مضارع	regular	ماضي
agree	يوافق	agreed
arrive	يصل	arrived
ask	يسأل	asked
believe	يؤمن	believed
block	يحجب	blocked
borrow	يستعير	borrowed
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
change	يغير	changed
clean	ينظف	cleaned
climb	يتسلق	climbed
collect	يجمع	collected
contact	يتواصل	contacted
cook	يطهو	cooked
create	يبتكر	created
cycle	يقود دراجة	cycled
damage	يضر	damaged
decorate	يزين	decorated
decide	يقرر	decided
depend	يعتمد	depended
die	يموت	died
disappoint	يخيب	disappointed
dry	يجفف	dried
explore	يستكشف	explored
explain	يشرح	explained
face	يواجه	faced
finish	ينهي	finished
harvest	يحصد	harvested
help	يساعد	helped
hurry	يسرع	hurried
imagine	يتخيل	imagined
include	يشمل	included
join	ينضم	joined
knock	يطرق	knocked

مضارع	regular	ماضي
laugh	يضحك	laughed
last	يدوم	lasted
lean	يميل	leaned
lift	يرفع	lifted
love	يحب	loved
melt	يذوب	melted
mix	يخلط	mixed
move	يتحرك	moved
need	يحتاج	needed
notice	يلاحظ	noticed
offer	يعرض	offered
organize	ينظم	organized
pass	يمر	passed
pick	يقطف	picked
plant	يزرع	planted
preserve	يحفظ	preserved
press	يضغط	pressed
produce	ينتج	produced
relax	يستريح	relaxed
roll	يدحرج	rolled
rub	يفرك	rubbed
sail	يبحر	sailed
seem	يبدو	seemed
share	يشارك	shared
shout	يصرخ	shouted
smile	يبتسم	smiled
sparkle	يلمع	sparkled
stay	يبقى	stayed
stir	يقلب	stirred
suggest	يقترح	suggested
sway	يتمايل	swayed
tie	يربط	tied
travel	يسافر	traveled
try	يحاول	tried



Conjugation of verbs

مضارع	irregular	ماضي
eat	يأكل	ate
blow up	ينفخ	blew up
burn	يحرق	burnt
build	يبني	built
come	يأتي	came
choose	يختار	chose
drink	يشرب	drank
fall	يسقط	fell
feel	يشعر	felt
find	يجد	found
fly	يطير	flew
get to	يصل إلى	got to
go	يذهب	went
grow	ينمو	grew
has/have	يملك	had
hang up	يعلق	hung up
hear	يسمع	heard
hold	يمسك	held
know	يعرف	knew
leave	يغادر	left
mean	يعني	meant
meet	يقابل	met
put	يضع	put
ride	يركب	rode
run	يجري	ran
say	يقول	said
see	يرى	saw
sell	يبيع	sold
send	يرسل	sent
sit	يجلس	sat
speak	يتحدث	spoke
spend	يقضي	spent
stand	يقف	stood
smell	يشم	smelt

مضارع	irregular	ماضي
take	يأخذ	took
tell	يخبر	told
think	يفكر	thought
understand	يفهم	understood
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
wear	يرتدي	wore
write	يكتب	wrote





حمل الان

مجانا وحصريا

المراجعة رقم (6)







unit 1 Green cities مدن صديقة للبيئة

Key vocabulary :

community garden	حديقة مجتمعية	plant	يزرع
apartment block	عمارة سكنية	roof	سطح المنزل
chemicals	مواد كيماوية	neighborhood	حى / مجاورة
harvest	يحصد	natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي
Mini Forest	منظمة ميني فورست	climate change	تغير المناخ
wildlife	حياة برية	green space	مساحة خضراء
organization	منظمة / مؤسسة	information	معلومات
nature	طبيعة	local communities	مجتمعات محلية
floor	دور / طابق	pass through	يمر عبر
hang out	يتفسح	art works	أعمال فنية
local residents	سكان محليون	railway line	خط سكة حديد
species of plants	فصائل النباتات	theater performance	عرض مسرحي
selfish	أناني	giant	عملاق
honey	عسل	pretty yucky	مقرف جدا للغاية
park	حديقة	Egyptian Food	طعام مصري
city center	وسط المدينة	in the distance	من بعيد
Scottish food	طعام اسكتلندي	third floor	الدور الثالث

Definitions

community garden	حديقة مجتمعية	a big green space on the roof to grow plants.	مساحه كبيره خضراء على سطح المنزل لزراعه النباتات.
roof	سطح	the top of a house or building	قمة المبنى
apartment block	عمارة سكنية	a group of flats in a building	مجموعه من الشقق السكنيه في مبنى
chemicals	مواد كيماوية	things we use or produce in a laboratory	الأشياء التى نستخدمها أو نصنعها فى المعمل.
harvest	يحصد	to collect the vegetables and fruits	أن تجمع الخضار والفواكه
natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي	things make the plants grow better	أشياء تجعل النباتات تنمو بشكل أفضل
pass through	يمر عبر	is to go from a place to another one.	ان تذهب من مكان الى مكان آخر
railway line	سكة حديد	a metal road for trains.	طريق معدنى للقطارات
local residents	سكان محليون	all the people who live in a neighborhood.	جميع الناس الذين يعيشون في الحي
hang out	يتفسح / يخرج	spend time with friends or relatives, have fun together.	ان تقضى وقتا مع اصدقائك او اقاربك وتستمتعون معا
miss	يفتقد	is to feel sad when you can't have or see something or someone.	ان تشعر بالحزن عندما لا تستطيع ان تتناول او ترى شيء ما او شخص ما

Grammar

The present simple tense — زمن المضارع البسيط

Form :

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	inf (مصدر الفعل) ....
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	inf + (s / es / ies)...

- I walk to school. - He walks to school.

Negative :

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	don't + inf (مصدر الفعل) ....
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	doesn't + inf (مصدر الفعل) ....

- I don't walk to school. - He doesn't walk to school.

Yes or No Question:

Do + (I / we / you / they / اسم جمع)	+ inf (مصدر الفعل) ...... ?
Does + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد)	+ inf (مصدر الفعل) ...... ?

-Do you go to the club on Fridays? - Does she get up early?
- Yes, I do. - No, I don't. - Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

Adverbs of frequency — ظروف التكرار

نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل للتحدث عن مدى تكرار حدوث هذا الفعل.

always	usually	often	sometimes	rarely	never
دائما	عادة	غالباً	أحياناً	نادرا	أبدا

- I always go to the club on Saturdays. - He never goes to the park in the rain

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	ظرف تكرار +	inf (مصدر الفعل) ....
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	ظرف تكرار	inf + (s / es / ies)...

- I usually walk to school. - He never walks to school.- Maryam usually helps in the garden.

تأتي ظروف التكرار في الجمله بعد (am / is / are)

- I am always happy. - He is never late. - We are never angry.

السؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما نستخدم الاداه How often بمعنى كم مرة

How often	do	I / we / you/ they / اسم جمع	+ inf (مصدر الفعل) ....?
	does	he / she / it / اسم مفرد	

وللاجابه عن هذا السؤال نستخدم ظروف التكرار

- How often does she study English? - She always studies English.

من الممكن استخدام ظروف تكرار هذه ايضا و لكن في نهاية الجملة .

once	مرة	في	day	يوم
twice	مرتين	a	week	أسبوع
three times	ثلاث مرات		year	سنة
four times	أربع مرات			

How often do they go to the club? - They go to the club once a week.
How often does he visit his grandma ? - He visits his grandma three times a week.

Important Paragraphs

1. Life in New York

I live in New York. It's a beautiful city with a lot of green spaces. My favorite place is the High Line. It was a railway line, but they made it into a beautiful garden. You can see beautiful art, theaters, and a cinema in the High Line Park. I like it very much.

أنا أعيش في نيويورك. إنها مدينة جميلة بها الكثير من المساحات الخضراء. مكاني المفضل هو "هاي لاين". كان خط سكة حديد، لكنهم حولوه إلى حديقة جميلة. يمكنك رؤية فنون جميلة ومسارح وسينما في حديقة "هاي لاين". أحبها كثيرًا.

2. The Selfish Giant

I love the story of The Selfish Giant. It's my favorite. It's about a giant man who lived in a beautiful garden. He didn't want the children to play in his garden, so his garden became very ugly. But when he let the children play, the garden became beautiful again. We shouldn't be selfish.

أنا أحب قصة "العملاق الأناني". إنها قصتي المفضلة. تدور القصة حول رجل عملاق كان يعيش في حديقة جميلة. لم يكن يريد أن يلعب الأطفال في حديقته، فأصبحت حديقته قبيحة جدًا. ولكن عندما سمح للأطفال باللعب، أصبحت الحديقة جميلة مرة أخرى. لا يجب أن نكون أنانيين.

3. Life in Scotland

I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and my sister. It is a nice country with a lot of beautiful places. I live on the third floor, and I have a great view of the trees. I can visit Edinburgh Castle. Scottish food is not good; I miss Egyptian food.

أنا أخيرًا في اسكتلندا مع أمي وأبي وأختي. إنها دولة جميلة بها الكثير من الأماكن الرائعة. أعيش في الطابق الثالث، ولدي إطلالة رائعة على الأشجار. يمكنني زيارة قلعة إدنبرة. الطعام الاسكتلندي ليس جيدًا؛ أفتقد الطعام المصري.

4. The Community Garden

Mariam and her friends work in a community garden. It's on the roof of an apartment block. They grow vegetables and fruit for people in the local area. The community garden is a good idea. The plants help to clean the air. The community garden project is a great place to make new friends.

مريم وأصدقاؤها يعملون في حديقة مجتمعية. تقع على سطح مبنى سكني. يزرعون الخضروات والفواكه لأهل المنطقة المحلية. الحديقة المجتمعية فكرة جيدة. تساعد النباتات في تنقية الهواء. مشروع الحديقة المجتمعية مكان رائع لتكوين صداقات جديدة.

5. The Mini Forest

Mini Forest is an organization that plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and support our wildlife. We try to find the best urban locations for our forests. We never grow foreign plants; we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area.

"الغابة الصغيرة" هي منظمة تزرع مناطق صغيرة من الأشجار في وسط مدننا. هذه المناطق الخضراء الخاصة تساعد الناس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة وتدعم الحياة البرية لدينا. نحاول العثور على أفضل المواقع الحضرية لغاباتنا. نحن لا نزرع نباتات غريبة؛ نزرع دائمًا أشجارًا تنمو بشكل طبيعي في المنطقة.

6. Neighborhood

From: samy@gmail.com
To: nada@gmail.com
Subject: Neighborhood
Dear Nada,

How are you? I'm happy to write this email to you. My apartment is on the sixteenth floor, and we have a great view of the city. Our neighborhood has a lot of green spaces. There are many projects that will create parks and green areas. We have many gardens, and the community garden is my favorite place in the neighborhood. Write soon and tell me all your news.

Lots of love,
Samy

عزيزتي ندى،
كيف حالك؟ أنا سعيد بكتابة هذا البريد الإلكتروني لك. شقتي في الطابق السادس عشر، ولدينا إطلالة رائعة على المدينة. حيّنا به الكثير من المساحات الخضراء. هناك العديد من المشاريع التي ستنشئ حدائق ومناطق خضراء. لدينا العديد من الحدائق، والحديقة المجتمعية هي مكاني المفضل في الحي. اكتبي لي قريبًا وأخبريني بكل أخبارك.
مع الكثير من الحب،
سامي



Important Sentences

Ahmed helps his uncle on Fridays.
يساعد أحمد عمه أيام الجمعة.
How often does Maryam go to the dentist?
كم مرة تذهب مريم إلى طبيب الأسنان؟
The lovely garden makes the children happy.
الحديقة الجميلة تجعل الأطفال سعداء.
Our apartment is in the city center.
شقتنا في وسط المدينة.
People use the park for activities.
يستخدم الناس الحديقة للأنشطة.
We have a great view over the trees.
لدينا إطلالة رائعة على الأشجار.
People use the park for meeting friends.
يستخدم الناس الحديقة للقاء الأصدقاء.
Our apartment is in the city center.
شقتنا في وسط المدينة.
Scottish people love eating porridge.
الناس الاسكتلنديون يحبون تناول العصيدة.
I have a lot of new friends.
لدي الكثير من الأصدقاء الجدد.
How are things with you?
كيف حالك؟
New York is a very noisy city.
نيويورك مدينة صاخبة جداً.
There aren't many parks in New York.
ليس هناك العديد من الحدائق في نيويورك.
The lovely garden makes the children happy.
الحديقة الجميلة تجعل الأطفال سعداء.
A giant lives in the village.
يعيش عملاق في القرية.
There are tall trees in the garden.
هناك أشجار طويلة في الحديقة.

New York has a lot of green spaces.
نيويورك تحتوي على الكثير من المساحات الخضراء.
Our apartment is on the fifth floor.
شقتنا في الطابق الخامس.
You can walk through the gardens.
يمكنك المشي عبر الحدائق.
I'm usually in bed before 10 pm.
عادة ما أكون في السرير قبل الساعة 10 مساءً.
My dad always eats a big breakfast in the morning.
والدي دائماً يتناول فطوراً كبيراً في الصباح.
Donia and Wael are never late for school.
دونيا و وائل لا يتأخران أبداً عن المدرسة.
How often do you go to the dentist?
كم مرة تذهب إلى طبيب الأسنان؟
Do you want to come to my house?
هل تريد أن تأتي إلى بيتي؟
Maryam helps her aunt on Fridays.
تساعد مريم عمتها أيام الجمعة.
We need more community gardens.
نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من حدائق المجتمع.
What things do you grow?
ما الأشياء التي تزرعها؟

General Exercises

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(A)

1. Maryam helps her aunt in a community.................... .

a bank　b hospital　c garden　d theatre

2. Her aunt lives in a/an ....

a house　b apartment block　c tent　d villa

3. They use natural.................. .

a food　b drinks　c oil　d fertilizers

4. Plants help to clean the....................... .

a air　b clothes　c house　d streets

(B)

1. A giant lives in a ....

a village　b city　c town　d hotel

2. He has a wonderful ....

a car　b bike　c company　d garden

3. There are colorful birds singing in the ....

a floor　b sky　c trees　d street

4. The local .... come to play in the giant's garden.

a doctors　b children　c workers　d students

(C)

1. New York is very.................... all the time.

a expensive　b quiet　c noisy　d calm

2. Alexandria is much quieter.................... .

a at night　b in summer　c in October　d on Friday

3. There are lots of.................... restaurants in New York.

a cheap　b different　c big　d expensive

4. The food in New York doesn't.................... like food at home.

a look　b smell　c taste　d feel

(D)

1. Mini Forest is a/an .... which plants small areas.

a bank　b organization　c school　d hospital

2. We plant trees in the .... of our cities.

a middle　b side　c top　d back

3. These special .... areas help people enjoy nature.

a green　b polluted　c damaged　d destroyed

4. It helps to protect our ....

a money　b books　c clothes　d wildlife



2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We plant fruit and vegetables in the community ....
a factory b hospital c office d garden
2. My aunt lives in an apartment ....
a book b block c kitchen d balcony
3. I always help my aunt .... Friday afternoons.
a in b at c of d on
4. They are .... They work for no money.
a players b teachers c doctors d volunteers
5. The .... is the top of a house or building.
a roof b pavement c hall d bedroom
6. The community gardens are great places to .... friends.
a take b eat c make d bake
7. We don't use chemicals. Our food is ....
a bad b terrible c polluted d organic
8. Mini Forest is a/an .... which plants small areas of trees.
a school b club c organization d factory
9. They are .... Mini Forest organization. They don't take money.
a teachers b volunteers c doctors d vets
10. At Mini Forest, we work hard to find the best .... locations for our forests.
a rural b desert c urban d coastal
11. Volunteers work for ....
a money b rewards c no money d pounds
12. .... is to go from a place to another one.
a Walking b Traveling c Jumping d Running
13. .... is a metal road for trains.
a Street b Hotel c Railway line d Tent
14. .... are all the people who live in a neighborhood.
a Teachers b Drivers c Vets d Local residents
15. When you spend time with friends or relatives and have fun, you are ....
a reading b sleeping c hanging out d eating
16. I don't like Scottish food. I think it's pretty ....
a yucky b tasty c amazing d spicy
17. We went to Scotland and saw Edinburgh ....
a Castle b Tower c Bridge d Palace
18. I miss Egyptian food; it's very ....
a delicious b ugly c bad d terrible
19. I visited .... in Egypt and saw a lot of monuments there.
a Luxor b Cairo c Alexandria d Aswan
5. He is from Scotland; he is ....
a Scottish b Egyptian c Italian d French
20. These special .... areas help people enjoy nature.
a green b ugly c noisy d terrible

21. Mini Forest Organization helps to protect our ....

a wildlife b roads c buildings d industries

22. We plant fruit and vegetables in the community ....

a factory b hospitah c office d garden

23. My aunt lives in an apartment ....

a book b block c kitchen d balcony

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

vegetables - green - grass - volunteers

We need more community gardens. The community garden is a big (1) .... space on the roof of an apartment block. The people who work there are all (2)........................ from the neighborhood. They grow (3)......................... to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the market, too!

roof - fertilizer - bathroom - plant

Helping the environment is very important .We can do this if we (1)...................... more trees .Some people plant flowers and other plants on the (2) .... of their houses .They use natural (3)..............................to make the plants grow well. That help clean the air.

wildlife - green - areas - urban - colors

Mini Forest is an organization. It plants small (1) .... of trees in the middle of our cities. These special (2) .... areas help people enjoy nature. People – who work in this organization always work hard to find the best (3) .... locations for our forests, where people and (4) ....need nature most.

plants - roof - sell - hall

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow, but Mariam goes to help her aunt on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the (1) .... of an apartment block. They grow vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they (2)............ them, too. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea because (3) .... help to clean the air in the the city, and it is a good place to make new friends.

4. Read the text and answer the questions:

In a village, in the countryside, there was a giant. He has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The giant has a wonderful ....

a car b Forest c garden d office

2. The lovely garden always makes the children ……………… .

a sad b bad c mad d happy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does the giant live?

…………………………………………………………

4. What does the giant have?

…………………………………………………………

5. What is the text about ?

…………………………………………………………

My name is Maryam. I joined Mini Forest organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.

At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most. We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This passage is about ……………… .

a favourite food b Mini Forest c sports d school

2. We never grow ………………plants in our projects

a good b nice c local d foreign

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is " Mini Forest "? …………………………………

4. Where does Mini Forest organization plant trees?

…………………………………………………………

5. Summarize the first paragraph in your own words.

…………………………………………………………

I am Maryam. I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad and my brother. It's really interesting! Our apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor. We have a great view over the trees . People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends. In the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle, too! I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt. I miss the warm, sunny weather. The Scottish food is OK, but the Egyptian food is better.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We have a great ……………… over the trees.

a food b books c view d office

2. We can see the famous Edinburgh ……………… .

a Castle b Bank c Hospital d Theaters

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where is Maryam now?

…………………………………………………………

4. Which food is better, the Egyptian or the Scotch food?

…………………………………………………………

5. What do people use the park for?

5. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. the city – apartment – Our – is in – center.
2. do – What – grow – things – you ?
3. lives – a – in – giant – village – The.
4. the dentist – you – go – How – do – often – to ?
5. the city – center – Our – is – apartment – in.
6. helps – his – Ahmed – Fridays – uncle – on.
7. come – you – my house – want to – Do- to?
8. activities – park – for – use – People – the.
9. city – very – a – New York – noisy – is.
10. 10 pm – I'm – in bed – before – usually.
11. the dentist – Maryam – go – How – does – often – to ?
12. always – My dad – a big breakfast – in the morning – eats
13. parks – There – many – aren't – in – New York .
14. view – the trees – We – have – a great – over.
15. helps – her – Maryam – Fridays – aunt – on.
16. The lovely – makes – children – happy – the – garden.
17. happy – makes – children – The lovely – the – garden.
18. use – for – the – park – meeting friends – People.
19. never – Donia and Wael – late – are – for school
20. need – We – community – more – gardens.
21. people – porridge – Scottish – love – eating.

22. trees – the garden – in – There – are – tall.

23. have – I – of – friends – new – a lot.

24. spaces – has – New York – of green – a lot.

25. with – you – are – How – things ?

26. apartment – is – on the – fifth floor – Our .

27. walk – You – the – gardens – through – can.

6. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My brother likes dates. He .... (never) eats them.
2. Do they .... (studying) Arabic every day?
3. She never .... (eat) unhealthy food.
4. He .... (meets always) up his friends on Fridays.
5. How often .... (do) Ali do sports?
6. What subject.................... (do) she like?
7. They .... (play usually) computer games on Sundays.
8. Maryam .... (drinks usually) coffee.
9. We .... (doesn't) live near the park.
10. We .... (always) walk to school because our school is very far.
10. How often .... (does) they do sports?
11. My sister likes fish. She .... (never) eats it.
12. My sister and I sometimes.................... (plays) in the garden after school.
13. We always .... (reading) magazines in our free time.
14. She studies hard, so she .... (never) gets a good grade.
15. He often.................... (reading) magazines in his free time.
16. We never .... (eating) unhealthy food.
17. I'm always on time. I'm....................(sometimes) late.
18. The weather ....(usually is) sunny in Egypt.
19. How ....(much) do you playtennis? – Three times a week.
20. We sometimes.................... (cycling) on holidays.
21. He.................... (always) eats meatat all. He dislikes it.
22. Do you.................... (studying) English every day?
23. She.................... (meets always) up her friends on Saturdays.
24. What subject.................... (does) you like most?
25. They.................... (doesn't) live near the park.

7. Punctuate the following.

1. how often does maryam work in the garden? ....
2. where is maryam now? ....
3. the giant has a wonderful garden ....
4. scottish people like to eat porridge ....



Unit 1 We are all different نحن جميعا مختلفون

Key vocabulary :

nervous	متوتر / مرتبك	clever = intelligent	ذكي / ماهر
shy	خجول	polite	مؤدب
friendly	ودود	messy	فوضوي
calm = quiet	هادئ	organized = tidy	منظم
building	مبنى	gymnasium	صالة ألعاب رياضية
court	فناء / ساحة	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
laboratory	معمل علوم	water fountain	نافورة مياه
laptop	كمبيوتر محمول	tablet	حاسوب لوحي
hare	أرنب بري	mice	فئران
noise	ضوضاء	voice	صوت بشري
bird	طائر	fish	سمكة
cat	قطة	lizard	سحلية
independent	مستقل	sharp	حاد
claws	مخالب	fur	فراء

Definitions

friendly	ودود	nice to others, helpful	لطيف مع للآخرين، متعاون
shy	خجول	worried about talking to people, quiet.	قلق بشأن التحدث إلى الناس، و هادئة
clever	ذكي	intelligent, good at school work	ذكي وجيد في العمل المدرسي
polite	مؤدب	speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect	يتحدث بعناية وبشكل صحيح، ويظهر الاحترام
messy	فوضوي	not tidy or organized	غير مرتب أو منظم
organized	منظم	tidy, careful	مرتب و حريص
nervous	متوتر / مرتبك	not calm, worried	ليس هادئا، و قلقا

Grammar

Relative pronouns	ضمائر الوصل

who الذي / التي تستخدم مع العاقل

Mr Sayed is the teacher who teaches us English.

which الذي / التي تستخدم مع غير العاقل (أشياء)

This is the red jacket which I wanted to buy.

where حيث و تستخدم مع المكان

This is the school where I learned.



Adjectives with "-ing" and "-ed" — الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed / ing)

"-ed" adjectives

-تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ ed لوصف شعور شخص أو الذي يشعر بالصفة.

The girl is frightened. The girl feels frightened. تشعر البنت بالخوف

"-ing" adjectives

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ ing لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء التي تسبب شعورما.

The snake is frightening. The snake causes fright. يسبب الثعبان الرعب

but — لكن

تستخدم (but) لربط فكرتين متناقضتين في جملة.

Lizards make good pets, but it's difficult to find food for them.

Important Paragraphs

1. El Fouad School

We love our school. It is El Fouad School. We are proud of it. It has new, modern buildings. There are many classrooms. It has two new laboratories. There's a playground and playing field. There are over 50 desktop computers and tablets. There is a gymnasium where we can play basketball and handball.

نحن نحب مدرستنا. إنها مدرسة الفؤاد. نحن فخورون بها. يوجد بها مباني جديدة وحديثة. هناك العديد من الفصول الدراسية. يوجد بها مختبران جديدان. يوجد ملعب وساحة لعب. يوجد أكثر من 50 جهاز كمبيوتر مكتبي وجهاز لوحي. يوجد صالة رياضية حيث يمكننا لعب كرة السلة وكرة اليد.

2. A Fantasy TV Series

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series. It is popular with people of all age groups. It is interesting. It also takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the Earth is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy named Frey. Frey wants to return to Earth to look for his family.

"وندالاند" هو مسلسل تلفزيوني خيالي. إنه شائع بين الناس من جميع الفئات العمرية. إنه مثير للاهتمام. تدور أحداثه أيضًا في المستقبل على كوكب يسمى وندا. هذا عالم يعيش فيه البشر لأن الأرض أصبحت الآن شديدة الحرارة. المسلسل يروي قصة صبي يدعى فري. يريد فري العودة إلى الأرض للبحث عن عائلته.

3. Cats

Cats are beautiful with soft fur that is nice to touch. They're clean and calm animals. They are usually friendly. They like people, but they're independent. Cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. When you pet a cat, it makes you happy.

القطط جميلة بفرائها الناعم الذي يكون لطيفًا عند اللمس. إنها حيوانات نظيفة وهادئة. عادة ما تكون ودودة. تحب الناس لكنها مستقلة. تمتلك القطط مخالب وأسنان حادة، لكنها تستخدمها فقط عندما تكون خائفة. عندما تداعب قطة، تشعر بالسعادة.

4. Your First Day at School

I am Hazem. It's my first day at school. I was a bit nervous and shy. I met two students, Asser and Basel. Basel is very clever. He's good at math. I can ask him if I need any help with my homework. I like my new school and my new friends.

أنا حازم. إنه يومي الأول في المدرسة. كنت متوترًا وخجولًا بعض الشيء. قابلت طالبين، عسر وباسل. باسل ذكي جدًا. إنه جيد في الرياضيات. يمكنني أن أطلب مساعدته إذا احتجت إلى أي مساعدة في واجباتي المنزلية. أحب مدرستي الجديدة وأصدقائي الجدد.

5. The Hare

The weather is sunny and warm. The Hare lies comfortably in the soft grass, enjoying the peaceful surroundings. Suddenly, her stomach makes a loud noise, reminding her of how long it's been since she last ate. The Hare remembers the fresh, delicious carrots waiting for her in the kitchen. Realizing she's incredibly hungry, the Hare quickly runs back home.

الطقس مشمس ودافئ. الأرنب مستلقٍ بشكل مريح في العشب الناعم، مستمتعًا بالهدوء من حوله. فجأة، يصدر بطنه صوتًا عالياً، يذكره بمرور وقت طويل منذ أن تناول الطعام آخر مرة. يتذكر الأرنب الجزر الطازج واللذيذ الذي ينتظره في المطبخ. بعد أن أدرك أنه جائع للغاية، يركض الأرنب بسرعة إلى المنزل.

Important Sentences

How does Hend feel today?
كيف تشعر هند اليوم ؟
He is a very kind boy.
إنه فتى طيب جدًا.
Let's share my book today.
لنشارك كتابي اليوم .
I'm excited to see what happens next.
أنا متحمس لرؤية ما سيحدث بعد ذلك.
What is the quietest animal?
ما هو أهدأ حيوان؟
Cats are my favorite animals.
القطط هي حيواناتي المفضلة.
Cats have sharp claws and teeth.
القطط لديها مخالب وأسنان حادة.
My school is great, but it's very far.
مدرستي رائعة، لكنها بعيدة جدًا.
The hare and the monkey are scared.
الأرنب والقرد خائفان.
There are some carrots in the kitchen.
هناك بعض الجزر في المطبخ.
Something is moving inside Hare's house.
شيء ما يتحرك داخل بيت الأرنب.
Lions are the bravest animals in the world.
الأسود هي أشجع الحيوانات في العالم .
We are proud of our school.
نحن فخورون بمدرستنا.
The laboratories have all the equipment.
المختبرات تحتوي على جميع المعدات.
Let's sit on the bench.
لنجلس على المقعد.
Where do you study science?
أين تدرس العلوم ؟

My friend Nadine is funny and friendly.
صديقتي نادين مرحة وودودة.
Ali shows respect to everyone.
علي يُظهر الاحترام للجميع.
I have an extra book for you.
لدي كتاب إضافي لك.
Do you have all your books yet?
هل لديك جميع كتبك حتى الآن؟
I have a lot of books in my room at home, but I'm a bit messy.
لدي الكثير من الكتب في غرفتي بالمنزل، لكنني فوضوي قليلاً.
I'll show you where the science classroom is.
سأريك أين تقع غرفة العلوم .
We are proud of our new, modern buildings.
نحن فخورون بمبانينا الجديدة والحديثة.
They are clean and calm animals, which are usually friendly.
إنهم حيوانات نظيفة وهادئة، وعادة ما تكون ودودة.
They like people, but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.
إنهم يحبون الناس، لكنهم مستقلون، لذا لا تحتاج إلى أخذهم في 
نزهة كل يوم .





General Exercises

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(A)

1. Elephants are the .... land animals.

a largest b smallest c shortest d fastest

2. Elephants have .... trunks.

a long b tall c short d small

3. Elephants use their ....to get food and drink water.

a hands b trunks c legs d ears

4. Elephants also have big........................ .

a ears b foot c leg d nose

(B)

1. Hatem is a new student at our.......................... .

a school b house c bank d hospital

2. Hatem is very.......................... and clever.

a sad b nervous c shy d polite

4. Zaid shows Hatem where his .... are.

a classrooms b books c friends d fans

3. Zaid is Hatem's new............................... .

a uncle b teacher c student d friend

(C)

1. The west court is a large open............................... .

a area b place c hall d land

2. There are also......................... to sit on under the trees.

a desks b tables c chairs d benches

3. Children can grow .... with Mr Mahdi.

a plants b vegetables c fruits d flowers

4. Mr Mahdi is the teacher who helps in the ....

a laboratory b class c garden d playground

(D)

1. The weather is ....

a hot b sunny c rainy d snowy

2. The hare lies in the.......................... .

a sand b mud c trees d grass

3. The hare feels............................ .

a sad b hungry c thirsty d nervous

4. The hare likes to eat............................... .

a chicken b carrots c fruits d onions

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This room isn't tidy. It's really............. .
a clean b messy c good d organized
2. She doesn't like to talk to strange people because she is ....
a nervous b tidy c clever d shy
3.Ahmed speaks to people carefully and shows respect. He is really ....
a shy b nervous c polite d messy
4. Basma is very .... She is very good at math.
a clever b shy c worried d untidy
5. Come .... , Nada. I'll show you where the classroom is.
a away b out c on d for
6. The............. is the place where we do experiments.
a library b laboratory c hall d garden
7. Look, the water is coming out of the............. beautifully.
a books b flowers c fountains d trees
8. The ....is the place where you can find our computer classrooms.
a gymnasium b garden c IT Building d pool
9. We play basketball in the ....
a laboratory b fountain c pool d gymnasium
10. I'm very............. . I want to eat.
a angry b hungry c nervous d worried
11. The elephant is the............. land animal.
a smallest b thinnest c biggest d shortest
12. My little sister is afraid .... the dark.
a in b next c out d of
13. There's someone here, I can hear his ....
a voice b clothes c books d face
14. He tells me funny stories. He makes me............. .
a cry b laugh c angry d sorry
15. Fish are very .... pets, they don't make noise.
a bad b ugly c noisy d calm
16. Cats have soft .... which is nice to touch.
a fur b claws c teeth d paws
17. Cats have sharp ....and teeth.
a scissors b swords c knifes d claws
18. What is the best animal to keep as a .... at home?
a giant b pet c book d watch
19. The word .... has the same meaning as "tidy".
a shy b afraid c organized d nervous
20. Your room is .... I can't find my key.
a organized b clever c messy d afraid
21. Cats have sharp ....and teeth.
a scissors b swords c knifes d claws



22. Malak Kareem is............. . She always shows respect to others.

a polite b shy c nervous d messy

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pet - ugly - scared - beautiful

Cats Are the Best Pets. They are (1)..................... animals with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent. They have sharp claws and teeth. They only use them when they are (2).................... . People also say that when you (3).................... a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.

friendly - walk - fur - pet

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft (1).................... which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually (2) .... They like people but they are independent. We don't need to take them for a (3)............... every day.

benches - tables - area - proud

Welcome to El Fouad School. It is the place which we are (1).................... of. The West Court is a large open (2)....................... where students spend time outside. There is a playground and playing field. There are also (3) .... to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

runs - grass - scared - flies

It's a sunny day. Hare lies in the (1)...................... . She feels hungry. Her stomach makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. Hare (2)......................... back home. she gets to her door, she finds that something is moving inside the house. She was (3)................. . She went to the elephant to help her. It was the mouse inside her house.

4. Read the text and answer the questions:

Cats Are the best Pets. Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly.

They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Cats Are the .... Pets

a worst b best c biggest d fastest

2. Cats only use them when they are......................... .

a happy b sad c scared d thirsty

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What happens when you pet a cat ?

4. Do you need to take cats for a walk every day?

5. Summarise the first paragraph in your own words?

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the Earth is now too hot.

The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring. He doesn't have many friends but he thinks perhaps his family is still alive, so he decides to hide on a spaceship which is traveling to Earth. The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord.

1. Frey who wants to return to ....

a Earth | b Mars | c Jupiter | d the sun

2. The underlined word "clever" means........................ .

a excited | b bored | c shy | d intelligent

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the text about?

4. Why is Wandaland popular with people of all ages?

5. What does Frey decide to do to find his family?

Eyad is a new student at school. He is thirteen. He feels a bit worried. Adam is Eyad's new friend at school. Adam is going to help Eyad get to know the school. He shows him where his classrooms are. Adam is very clever and he's good at math. Eyad can ask Adam if he needs any help with his homework.

Eyad forgot his textbooks because he is a bit messy. Adam is very polite. He offers to share his worksheets with Eyad. Eyad now is very happy and quiet.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "worried" is"................. .

a nervous | b relaxed | c organized | d sad

2. Adam is going to share his.......................... with Eyad at school.

a pencils | b pens | c toys | d worksheets

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How can Adam help Eyad?



4. What did Eyad forget?

5. What is Adam good at?

5. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. to see-what-next-happens - I'm - excited.
2. great-My school-, but-is-it's-far-very.
3. the bravest - in- Lions-are-animals- the world.
4. science-Where-you-do-study?
5. you your books-Do-have-all-yet?
6. Hend-does-today-How - feel?
7. is-animal-What-the-quietest?
8. The-are-monkey-scared - the hare - and.
9. proud-of-our-We-school-are.
10. Nadine-and-My friend -is-funny-friendly.
11. are-my-animals- Cats - favorite.
12. the kitchen-There -some-carrots - are - in.
13. laboratories-all-The-equipment - have - the.
14. shows-everyone - Ali-to-respect.
15. a very-is-He-boy-kind.
16. sharp-Cats-teeth-have-claws-and.
17. sit-the-Let's-on-bench.
18. have - I-extra-an-book-for you.
19. moving-Hare's - Something-house - is - inside.



20. share – Let's – today-book – my.

6. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The headteacher is the person..................(which) gave me the prize.
2. We were very .... (excite) when our team won the match.
3. Today's math lesson was very.............................. (interested).
4. The film was very .... (bored),Ididn't like it.
5. She was......................... (surprising) to see her old friend, Dina.
6. The taxi driver is the person.............. (which) gave me the money.
7. Is this the bike................................ (who) you bought?
8. The restaurant...................... (when) we used to eat is now closed.
9. It's a very............................... (excited) film. I'll watch it again.
10. The plants .... (who) we grow on the roof the garden are beautiful.
11. That woman is the person .... (which) saw the thief yesterday.
12. The café .... (when) we used to meet is now open.
13. Minya is the place..................... (which) I live.
14. The flowers...................... (who) grow in the garden are beautiful.
15. That's the teacher. .... (which) solves our problems.
16. Hamza likes the house. .... (who) he was born.
17. The children are very..............(excite) because they have new toys.
18. The book was really.............. (bored) and I couldn't finish reading it.
19. The film was very...................... (bored), I didn't like it.
20. She was .... (surprising) to see her old friend, Dina.
21. This the coat .... (who) you bought yesterday ?
22. Cairo is the place .... (which) I work.
23. This is the teacher .... (which) teaches us maths.
24. Maryam likesthe house .... (who) she was born.
25. The story is really .... (bored). It isn't nice.
26. Hana's wadding party was very .... (amazed).
27. We had a very .... (interests) party today.

7. Punctuate the following.

1. soha is the girl who has a new dress ....
2. wandaland is a fantasy TV series ....
3. I thought you were angry said Mouse. ....
4. cats are the best pets ....
5. cats have sharp claws and teeth ....



Unit 3 Vacation Plans خطط العطلة

Key vocabulary :

museum	متحف	credit card	بطاقة إئتمانية
minaret	مئذنة	trip	رحلة
Souk	سوق	cheaper	أرخص
palace	قصر	social media	وسائل تواصل اجتماعى
rollercoaster	قطار الملاهى	adventure	مغامرة
quad biking	ركوب دراجات رباعية	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
deer	غزال	bear	دب
secret	سر	incredible	هائل / رائع
heights	مرتفعات	cool	منعش
wolf	ذئب ذئب	clear	نقى
fear	خوف	delicious	لذيذ
puddle	بركة مياه صغيرة	hill	تل
section	قسم / جزء	blog	مدونة عالانترنت
fantasy	خيال	destination	وجهة الوصول
store	متجر	carnival	مهرجان / ملاهى
brave	شجاع	waterfalls	شلال
realistic	واقعى	rides	ألعاب الملاهى
attractive	جذاب	cost	تكلفة

Grammar

Zero conditional (If / When) الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

نستخدم (If / When) مع زمن المضارع البسيط أو فعل ناقص مثل (can) لنعبر بهم عن الحقائق أو أشياء عادة ما تكون حقيقية.

If / When + جملة مضارع بسيط , جملة مضارع بسيط .

If you heat ice, it turns into water.

If / When + جملة مضارع بسيط , فاعل + can + inf.

When you study hard, you can get high marks.

جملة مضارع بسيط + (if / when) + جملة مضارع بسيط.

Ice turns into water if you heat it.

فاعل + can + inf + (if / when) + جملة مضارع بسيط.

You can get high marks when you study hard.

Do + (I /we/you/they/اسم جمع) + inf مصدر .... + (if / when) + جملة مضارع بسيط?

Do plants die if/when we don't water them?

Does + (he/She/it/اسم مفرد) + inf مصدر .... + (if / when) + جملة مضارع بسيط?

Does your aunt always make cake when you visit her?

Can + فاعل + inf مصدر .... + (if / when) + جملة مضارع بسيط?

Can you tell me if/when you need anything?

Q.word + do + (I /we/you/they/اسم جمع) + inf مصدر... + (if / when) + جملة مضارع بسيط?

Where do you go if/when you want some food?

Q.word + does + (he/She/it/اسم مفرد) + inf مصدر .... + (if / when) + جملة مضارع بسيط?

Where does she go if / when she has a vacation?

Q.word + can + فاعل + inf مصدر .... + (if / when) + جملة مضارع بسيط?

How can we get to Giza if/ when we miss the bus?

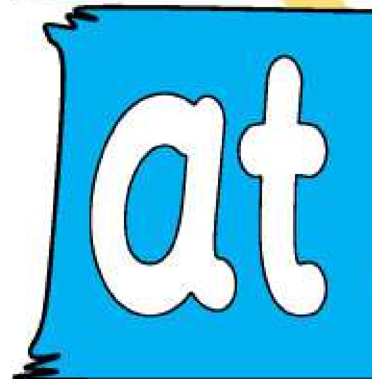
Prepositions of time — حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت at, on, in ، لنتحدث عن وقت حدوث شيء ما:



on		
days	الايام	Saturday, Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday
dates	التواريخ	1st April / 2nd May / 3rd July 4th October / 16th July
occasions	مناسبات خاصة	birthday
phrases	بعض العبارات	holiday-a sunny day-the weekend

in		
months	الشهور	January, February, March, April
seasons	فصول السنة	spring, summer, autumn (or fall), and winter.
years	السنوات	2020 / 1992 / 2023 ......
parts of the day	فترات اليوم	the morning / the afternoon the evening



at		
hours	الساعات	7 o'clock / 12 : 30 / 1 : 05
meals	أسماء الوجبات	breakfast / lunch / dinner lunchtime وقت الغداء ....
special parts of days	فترات اليوم الخاصة	dawn الفجر / midnight منتصف الليل midday منتصف اليوم / noon وقت الظهيرة night الليل

Important Paragraphs

My Vacation عطلتي

I love visiting new places. My trip is in Cairo. There are lots to see there. I can visit the museum first. Then I can take photos at the Manial Palace Museum for my school project. In Giza, there's a theme park. I can ride a rollercoaster there. It's amazing.

أحب زيارة الأماكن الجديدة. رحلتي في القاهرة. هناك الكثير لرؤيته هناك. يمكنني زيارة المتحف أولاً. ثم يمكنني التقاط صور في متحف قصر المنيل لمشروعي المدرسي. في الجيزة، هناك مدينة ملاهي. يمكنني ركوب الأفعوانية هناك. إنه أمر مذهل.

The Bab Zuweila Minaret مئذنة باب زويلة

There are lots of things to do in Cairo. Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكن القيام بها في القاهرة. لِنَصعَد مئذنة باب زويلة. إنه أمر صعب، لكن المنظر من الأعلى جميل. إذا كنا هناك في وقت متأخر من بعد الظهر، يمكننا مشاهدة غروب الشمس فوق المدينة.

Dome of Abul Hawa - قبة أبو الهوى

Fatima, my cousin, visited me last week. She wanted to visit the Dome of Abul Hawa. She likes it very much, but I had a problem. I am afraid of high places; this is my secret. I didn't want to tell her that I can't climb high places. I faced my fears and climbed the hill. I was happy and proud of myself.

زارتني ابنة عمي فاطمة الأسبوع الماضي. أرادت زيارة قبة أبو الهوى. إنها تحبها كثيرا، لكن كان لدي مشكلة. أنا أخاف من الأماكن العالية؛ هذا سري. لم أرغب في أن أخبرها أنني لا أستطيع صعود الأماكن المرتفعة. واجهت مخاوفي وصعدت التل. كنت سعيدًا وفخورًا بنفسي.

At the Carnival في الكرنفال

At the Carnival, there is a world of fantasy. There's a lot to see and do there. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster. There are theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too. The children's section has a lot of rides.

في الكرنفال، هناك عالم من الخيال. هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هناك. هناك ألعاب مذهلة لتجربتها مثل الأفعوانية. هناك مسارح حيث يمكنك مشاهدة العروض. هناك أماكن لتناول الطعام ومحلات تجارية أيضاً. قسم الأطفال يحتوي على العديد من الألعاب.

Quad biking ركوب الدراجات

I love quad biking. It's my favorite hobby. I like to go quad biking with my family. We call the company, its name is Desert Adventures. We meet the tour guide, and he helps us. We go to the desert, and we have fun. It is a nice hobby.

أحب ركوب الدراجات الرباعية. إنها هوايتي المفضلة. أحب الذهاب لركوب الدراجات الرباعية مع عائلتي. نتصل بالشركة، واسمها مغامرات الصحراء. نلتقي بالمرشد السياحي، وهو يساعدنا. نذهب إلى الصحراء ونستمتع. إنها هواية جميلة.

Sharm El-Sheikh شرم الشيخ

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt. It's by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do. You can swim in the sea. You can enjoy and relax at the beach. You can visit St Catherine's monastery. You can go quad biking in the desert.

شرم الشيخ مدينة مثيرة ومزدحمة في مصر. تقع على البحر الأحمر. هناك الكثير من الأشياء لرؤيتها والقيام بها. يمكنك السباحة في البحر. يمكنك الاستمتاع والاسترخاء على الشاطئ. يمكنك زيارة دير سانت كاترين. يمكنك ركوب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء.



Important Sentences

Let's visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa in Aswan.

لنزر قبة أبو الهوى في أسوان.

You can watch shows at the theater.

يمكنك مشاهدة العروض في المسرح.

Amal doesn't want to disappoint Fatima.

أمل لا تريد أن تخيب ظن فاطمة.

I found a spider in our bathroom.

وجدت عنكبوتًا في حمامنا.

The guide will meet us in the hotel tomorrow.

سيلتقي بنا المرشد في الفندق غدًا.

What is your brochure about?

ما هو الكتيب الخاص بك عن ماذا؟

We can ride on camels in Sharm El-Sheikh.

يمكننا ركوب الجمال في شرم الشيخ.

What a great birthday present!

يا له من هدية عيد ميلاد رائعة!

My brother loves rides and waterfalls.

أخي يحب الألعاب والشلالات.

We have tickets for the simulation theater.

لدينا تذاكر لمسرح المحاكاة.

It's Helen's first time in Cairo.

إنها المرة الأولى لهيلين في القاهرة.

Who comes to visit Mona?

من يأتي لزيارة منى؟

She wants to make her family happy.

هي تريد أن تسعد عائلتها.

The little deer comes to a large puddle.

يأتي الغزال الصغير إلى بركة كبيرة.

Study for about 30 minutes, but no longer.

ادرس لمدة 30 دقيقة تقريبًا، ولكن ليس أكثر من ذلك.

If you water plants, they grow.

إذا سقيت النباتات، فإنها تنمو.

What happens when it rains heavily?

ماذا يحدث عندما تمطر بغزارة؟

Where will the guide meet us?

أين سيلتقي بنا المرشد؟

Should we explore the souks on Monday?

هل يجب أن نستكشف الأسواق يوم الاثنين؟

Let's go to the theme park.

لنذهب إلى مدينة الملاهي.

I'm excited about my vacation.

أنا متحمس لعطلتي.

We can try new places for our vacation.

يمكننا تجربة أماكن جديدة لعطلتنا.

General Exercises

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(A)

1. Eyad visits his grandparents in ....

a October b June c May d July

2. Eyad goes........................ with his grandpa.

a swimming b running c fishing d walking

3. Eyad plays football with his....................... in the evenings.

a friends b father c brothers d parents

4. He sometimes helps his.....................in the kitchen.

a father b sister c friends d grandma

(B)

1. Danny was a.........................

a lion b lizard c deer d tiger

2. He had a white.............................. .

a feathers b tail c fur d skin

3. Danny had........................ horns.

a short b long c small d weak

4. Danny was a..............................

a fat b fast c lazy d slow

(C)

1. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and..........................city.

a beautiful b bed c terrible d horrible

2. You can .... in the sea there.

a run b walk c dance d swim

3. You can relax on the.................... by the sea.

a table b desk c bench d beach

4. You can go quad .... in the desert.

a biking b hiking c walking d running

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There're many rides to try in the.......................... .

a library b theme park c museum d mountain

2. This ancient mosque has a very high........................ .

a minaret b cinema c company d minaret

3. Let's.......................... the Egyptian Museum tomorrow.

a visit b wash c damage d eat

4. My uncle likes to ....new places, so he always travels to many countries.

a ask b explore c write d take

5. They're riding on the.................... . It's amazing!
a rollercoaster b chair c fence d table

6. If you put wood on water, it...................... .
a sinks b flies c runs d floats

7. You need your credit card to.................. for the ticket online.
a see b pay c relax d run

8. Your brain .... better if you have a regular routine.
a feels b sees c lives d works

9. It rarely rains in .... and it is very hot.
a spring b autumn c fall d summer

10. The deer lives in ....
a garden b hospital c forest d street

11. Sara is trying to .... her fear of heights.
a face b hunt c want d reach

12. There are a lot of.............. at the Carnival like the rollercoaster.
a jungles b waterfalls c rides d cities

13. I'm...................... I'm not afraid of snakes.
a beautiful b scary c brave d late

14. Sharm El-Sheikh is an amazing holiday..................... .
a station b destination c organization d work

15. The children's section has nine .... including the Orient Train.
a knifes b rides c fires d tables

16. When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of ....
a fantasy b sadness c homework d housework

17. I'm excited about our .... this week. It will be a fun holiday.
a vacation b study c work d school

18. After a long climb, they reach the .... of the mountain.
a bottom b top c side d base

19. Let's stop for a .... of water.
a drink b food c visit d run

20. We should wear helmets to protect our ....
a hands b feet c heads d knees

21. The quad bike has .... wheels.
a two b four c three d six

22. If you eat a .... meal at lunchtime, you can work better in the afternoon.
a quick b small c tasty d healthy

23. The Dome of Abu Al-Hawa is on a high .... in Aswan.
a sea b lake c hill d river

24. I get very .... at the water rides.
a hot b wet c dry d sad

25. We have to buy .... for the Orient Train at the Carnival.
a water b food c clothes d tickets



3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

money- theme - museum - trip

I love visiting new places. My (1)................. is in Cairo. There are lots to see there, I can visit the (2).................... first. Then I can take photos at the Manial Palace Museum for my school project. In Giza, there's a (3)................. park, I can ride a rollercoaster there). It's amazing,

restaurant - beautiful - minaret - library

There are lots of things to do in Cairo. Let's climb the Bab Zuweila (1)............................... . It's difficult, but the view from the top is (2) .... If we are in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city. Also you can have dinner at the (3)........................... .

beach - swim - Red Sea - run

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt, It's by the (1)...................... . There're lots of things to see and do. You can (2)........................ in the sea. You can enjoy and relax at the (3)......................... . You can visit St Catherine's monastery. You can go quad biking in the desert.

section - palace- theaters - see - rollercoaster

At the Carnival, there is a world of fantasy. There's a lot to (1)........................ and do there. There're amazing rides to try like the (2)...................... . There are (3)..................... where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too. The children's (4).......... has a lot of rides,

brains - concentrate - have - forget

If you want to study hard, you should follow these tips. Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. You can't (1) .... if you try to study for hours without a break. When you (2) .... regular breaks that help you more. It's also better to study at the same time each day even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's (3)............ work better if they have a regular routine.

4. Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is a hot country. In July, there are almost 400 hours of sunshine in Cairo, Aswan and Siwa. That long period of sunshine can be good or bad. It is good because it gives us energy. It helps children to be strong and healthy. But it can burn people's skin if they stay out between noon and 3 pm. In Egypt, we are lucky to have a long period of sunshine all the year round. So, millions of tourists like to visit Egypt especially in winter. Moreover, sunshine is good for many crops and fruit to grow, but they can't grow if there isn't enough water.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) tourists b) people c) crops and fruit d) children







2. The meaning of the underlined word "healthy" is.................... .

a) weak b) sick c) ill d) well

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

4. What is the sunshine good for?

....

5. What do you think of Egypt's weather in winter?

....

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places. Amal shows Fatima a photo and tells her that they can visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa and they can also climb up the hill to it. There's a
great view from there!

Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a secret, she is afraid of heights. Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says, "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fatima doesn't know what to ....

a) say b) eat c) see d) play

2. The underlined word "afraid" has the same meaning as "

a) busy b) hungry c) scared d) small

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Fatima live?

....

4. What does Amal show Fatima ?

....

5. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

....

5. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. explore - Should - the Souks-we-Monday- on?

....

2. go-the-Let's-to-park-theme.

....

3. about - I'm-vacation-my-excited.

....

4. can-places-new-We-try-our vacation - for.

....

5. minutes-for-Study - about 30-no longer-,but.

....

6. plants-grow-If-water-you-, they.

7. happens-when-rains-What-heavily-it?

8. meet-us-will- the guide - Where?

9. first-Cairo-It's-in-Helen's - time.

10. comes-to-Who-Mona- visit?

11. wants-happy-to-She-make- her family.

12. puddle - Deer - a large-to- The little - comes.

13. brochure-is-What-your-about?

14. can-We-ride-on camels-Sharm El-Sheikh - in.

15. a great-present-What-birthday!

16. rides-loves- My-waterfalls-brother.

17. simulation-We-tickets-have-for-theater-the.

18. in Aswan-visit-Abu Al-Hawa - Let's -the Dome - of.

19. can-at-shows-You-watch-the theater.

20. doesn't - Amal-to-Fatima-want-disappoint.

21. found-bathroom-I-a spider-in-our.

22. tomorrow-will-us-hotel- The guide-meet-in.

6. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. When she.................... (eat) too much cake, she gets a stomach ache.
2. I wear my jacket......................... (where) it is cold.
3. .... (Do) the freezer work if you don't close the door properly?

4. If the music is too loud, I .... (can) study.
5. If you try to study for many hours, you can't........... (concentrates).
6. Let's meet outside the school..................... (on) 10:30 am.
7. People's brains........... (works) better if they have a regular routine.
8. This building was built .... (at) 2020.
9. We have English class....................... (at) Wednesday.
10. If you mix red and blue, you..................... (got) purple.
11. Plants die if they......................... (not) get enough water.
12. I like to watch my favorite program...................... (on) lunchtime.
13. If you heat ice, it .... (melting).
14. What did you do......................... (in) the weekend?
15. I'm having a party....................... (at) my birthday.
16. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim.................. (at) spring.
17. It's helpful if you...................... (writes)down what you want to do.
18. If you don't know a word, you can....................... (looking) it up in a dictionary.
19. How can we .... (getting) to Luxor if we miss the train?
20. I usually go to Alexandria........................ (on) summer.
21. You can .... (calls) me if you need any help.
22. The museum is a good place to go............... (in) the weekend.
23. .... (Does) you buy a new dress if you have a party?
24. I always go to the club....................... (in) Saturday mornings.
25. What happens when you......................... (pressed) this button?
26. He was born...................... (on) March.
27. .... (On) lunchtime, I like to watch TV.

7. Punctuate the following.

1. basel and hazem are friends.

....

2. we can go quad biking in the desert in giza.

....

3. study for about 30 minutes

....

unit 4 **Celebrate good times** الاحتفال بالأوقات الجيدة

Key vocabulary :

invitation	دعوة	yard	ساحة
party	حفلة	candle	شمعة
streamers	شريط زينة ملونة	event	حدث
fireworks	ألعاب نارية	string	خيط
scissors	مقص	exam	امتحان
noodles	مكرونة	indoors	بالداخل
playlist	قائمة تشغيل الأغاني	reader	قارئ
balloon	بالون	documentary	فيلم وثائقي
revision	مراجعة	weather	طقس
free time	وقت فراغ	cycling	ركوب الدراجة
history	تاريخ	news	اخبار
guest	ضيف	breathe	يتنفس
blow out	يطفئ الشمعة	adult	بالغ
burn	يحرق	candle	شمعة
Mother's Day	عيد الام	character	شخصية
celebration	احتفال	sincerely	بصدق
local community	المجتمع المحلي	dress up	يرتدي

Grammar

The Present Continuous Tense — زمن المضارع المستمر

يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن اشياء تحدث لحظة الكلام

I	am	('m)	inf-ing ....
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is	('s)	inf-ing ....
We / You / They / اسم جمع	are	('re)	inf-ing ....

I am playing English now. She is sending email invitations. We are watching TV.

فاعل + (am not / isn't / aren't) + (inf-ing) ....

I am not playing English now. She isn't sending email invitations. We aren't watching TV.

(Am / Is / Are) + فاعل + (inf-ing) .... ?

- Are they organizing a party? – Yes, they are. – No, they aren't.
- Is she studying for her exams? – Yes, she is. – No, she isn't.

Q.word + (am / is / are) + فاعل + inf-ing .... ?

- What are you doing, Sara ? – I am cycling.

Key words.

this (week, month, year...) هذا الأسبوع ، الشهر، السنة

today اليوم now الآن at the moment في هذه اللحظة

Important Paragraphs

Birthdays around the world

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, we usually make birthday cakes for our children. We put candles on them to show their ages. In the USA and Britain, they give good friends and family presents on their birthday. In Brazil, they give the first piece of birthday cake to the most important people in their family. In China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on theirs. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday.

يتم الاحتفال بأعياد الميلاد في جميع أنحاء العالم. في مصر، نقوم عادةً بصنع كعكات عيد الميلاد لأطفالنا. نضع الشموع عليها لإظهار أعمارهم. في الولايات المتحدة وبريطانيا، يقدمون الهدايا للأصدقاء المقربين والعائلة في أعياد ميلادهم. في البرازيل، يقدمون أول قطعة من كعكة عيد الميلاد لأهم الأشخاص في عائلتهم. في الصين، يحب الناس تناول المعكرونة الطويلة أو الخوخ في أعياد ميلادهم. في جنوب إفريقيا، عيد الميلاد الـ 21 هو عيد مهم.

How I spend my time

From: noha@gmail.com
To: sara@gmail.com
Subject: How I spend my time.

Hi Sara,

How are things? I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. I am not spending all my time indoors. It's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too.

Lots of love,
Noha

كيف تسير الأمور؟ أنا أدرس بجد لامتحاناتي في الوقت الحالي. أنا لا أقضي كل وقتي في الداخل. من المهم الخروج وممارسة بعض التمارين، لذلك أذهب للجري كل صباح في الحديقة. كما أنني أمارس ركوب الدراجات في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع مع والدي. أحاول أيضًا أن أرى أصدقائي عدة مرات في الأسبوع.

مع حبي، نهى

Birthday party

From: ahmed@gmail.com
To: sami@gmail.com
Subject: My sister's birthday

Dear Sami,

How are things? Today is my sister's birthday party. We are getting ready for this party. I'm hanging up the streamers. My mother is decorating the birthday cake. My father is sending the invitations. My cousin is choosing the music. My sister loves the fireworks. We need an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard.

Write soon and tell me your news,
Ahmed

كيف تسير الأمور؟ اليوم هو حفلة عيد ميلاد أختي. نحن نستعد لهذه الحفلة. أنا أعلق الزينة. أمي تزين كعكة عيد الميلاد. والدي يرسل الدعوات. ابن عمي يختار الموسيقى. أختي تحب الألعاب النارية. نحتاج إلى شخص بالغ لإطلاق الألعاب النارية في الفناء.

اكتب لي قريباً وأخبرني بأخبارك،
أحمد

Mother's Day

I love my mom. I celebrate Mother's Day with her. I buy a nice present and give it to her during this celebration. My brothers and sisters also buy presents for our mom. Sometimes, we go to a restaurant and have fun on Mother's Day.

أحب أمي. أحتفل بعيد الأم معها. أشتري هدية جميلة وأعطيها لها خلال هذا الاحتفال. إخواني وأخواتي يشترون أيضًا هدايا لأمنا. أحيانًا نذهب إلى مطعم ونستمتع بعيد الأم.

Important Sentences

How do you celebrate your birthday?
كيف تحتفل بعيد ميلادك ؟
What are you doing today?
ماذا تفعل اليوم ؟
Who is choosing the music?
من يختار الموسيقى؟
Birthdays are not just for children.
أعياد الميلاد ليست فقط للأطفال.
Why isn't Salma at the party?
لماذا ليست سلمى في الحفلة؟
We're inviting people from the local community.
نحن ندعو الناس من المجتمع المحلي.
Come and try our delicious snacks and drinks.
تعال وجرب وجباتنا الخفيفة والمشروبات اللذيذة.
I hope you can attend.
آمل أن تتمكن من الحضور.
The school's Mother's Day celebration is on Sunday.
احتفال المدرسة بعيد الأم هو يوم الأحد.
How do they celebrate birthdays?
كيف يحتفلون بأعياد الميلاد؟
Birthdays are celebrated all over the world.
يتم الاحتفال بأعياد الميلاد في جميع أنحاء العالم.
People often give birthday cards.
غالبًا ما يقدم الناس بطاقات عيد الميلاد.

Who gets the first piece of the cake?
من يحصل على أول قطعة من الكعكة؟
They like to eat peaches on their birthdays.
يحبون تناول الخوخ في أعياد ميلادهم.
She is going running every morning.
هي تذهب للجري كل صباح.
What are you doing this week?
ماذا تفعل هذا الأسبوع؟
He is organizing a party.
هو ينظم حفلة.
I am cycling on the weekend.
أنا أمارس ركوب الدراجات في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.
What are you doing, Nesma?
ماذا تفعلين يا نسمة؟
They are decorating the birthday cake.
إنهم يزينون كعكة عيد الميلاد.
How many people are coming?
كم عدد الأشخاص القادمين؟
Will you pass me the scissors, please?
هل ستمرر لي المقص، من فضلك؟
Don't forget to invite your friends.
لا تنسَ دعوة أصدقائك.



General Exercises

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(A)

1. I'm studying hard for my.................. .
a exams b vacation c holiday d work
2. They will start next....................... .
a week b month c year d Sunday
3. I study .... hours a day.
a 2 b 5 c 6 d 7
4. In my .... time, I get outside and do some exercise.
a free b busy c sad d work

(B)

1. .... and feasts are special times.
a Festivals b Exams c Holidays d Vacations
2. Sham El-Nessim is an........................... festival.
a Chinese b Japanese c German d Egyptian
3. It is always on........................ .
a Monday b Tuesday c Wednesday d Thursday
4. People eat special........................... in Sham El-Nessim.
a food b vegetables c fruit d desserts

(C)

1. Injy had a .... party last Sunday.
a birthday b wedding c success d work
2. Her mom made a delicious..................... .
a pie b meal c dinner d cake
3. They played music and........................ .
a cooked b washed c ran d danced
4. Her parents gave her a beautiful ....for her birthday present.
a necklace b scraf c ring d gloves

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We use.................. to cut paper.
a streamers b strings c scissors d pencils
2. He is tidy. He always hangs.....................his clothes in the wardrobe.
a in b at c up d next
3. We need an adult to let off the.................. for the party because it's dangerous.
a fireworks b cakes c balloons d streamers
4. We write a/an................. to ask our friends to come to a party or event.
a order b invitation c invention d decoration

5. He plays football with his friends in the..................
a class b bedroom c yard d hospital

6. You look very tired. You need to..................
a cycle b relax c work d run

7. I'm.................. forward to the party to see my friends.
a cycling b putting c looking d making

8. I am a slow.................. I take four weeks to finish reading a book.
a writer b driver c reader d robot

9. There are enough chairs for all the...............at the party.
a guests b meals c traditions d presents

10. I'm have a birthday .... today.
a bike b taxi c car d party

11. Who.................. is the air that comes out of your mouth.
a View b Breath c Tradition d Sound

12. I hope all the guests can........................the party.
a invite b miss c attend d forget

13. The word "celebration" means.
a experiment b experience c party d game

14. Please, call me to........................if you can come or not.
a confirm b forget c hope d sail

15. We need an adult to let off the.................... in the sky.
a candles b fireworks c cakes d cakes

16. He blew out the.................. with one breath.
a candies b camels c candles d carpets

17. .... are a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water and eggs.
a Noodle b Fish c Presents d Peaches

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

blow out - cakes - candles - candy

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, we usually make birthday (1)............................ for our children. We put (2)........................ on them to show their ages. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. Children usually get presents, Children like to (3)............... the candles on their birthday cakes. In the USA and Britain, they give good friends and family presents on their birthday even when they're adults.

fireworks - sheets - party - streamers

Today is my sister's birthday party. We are getting ready for this (1)................ . I'm hanging up the (2)........................ . My mother is decorating the birthday cake. My father is sending the invitations. My cousin is choosing the music. My sister loves the fireworks. We need an adult to let off the (3)............................in the yard.



4. Read the text and answer the questions:

Dear Mr Ahmed,
I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday, March 21. As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We hope you can **attend**.
Date: Sunday, March 21
Time: 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm Location: School Hall
RSVP in writing to the email address above
Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.
Yours sincerely,
Randa Gamal

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The location is ....

a) School Hall b) playground c) laboratory d) library

2. The underlined word" **attend**" means to........................... .

a) leave b) come c) talk d) hope

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is this text about?

....

4. How long is the celebration?

....

5. When is the event?

....

I am Ahmed. Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister Maryam's birthday. We are all happy and busy, too. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister's party. I use the scissors to cut the string. My brother is blowing up some balloons. They're bright and colorful. We need to hang up these balloons, too.

My mom made a nice cake for my sister. Dalia and Noha are my friends. Now, they are decorating the birthday cake. We have 10 candles for the cake to show my sister's age. My father sent the invitations to our friends. We are all very excited!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord.

1. This text is about "Maryam's......................" .

a) school b) birthday c) friends d) balloons

2. My made a nice cake for my sister

a) aunt b) dad c) uncle d) grandma

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is Ahmed doing?

....

4. How old is Maryam ?

....



5. Who decorated the birthday cake?

5. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. Nesma-What-doing-you-are?
2. decorating-cake- the birthday-They-are.
3. coming-many-people-How-are?
4. you - the scissors-Will-me-pass-, please?
5. forget-invite-Don't-to-friends-your..
6. running-is-every-She-going-morning.
7. are-this-doing-What-you-week?
8. He-a-organizing-is-party.
9. the-cycling-I-weekend-am-on.
10. celebrate-do-How-birthdays - they?
11. all-Birthdays-over-the world-are celebrated.
12. often-cards-People-birthday-give.
13. gets-piece of-first-Who-the-the cake?
14. eat-peaches-They-on their-like to-birthdays.
15. the local-people- We're-community-inviting-from
16. delicious-and-snacks-Come-try-and-our drinks.
17. hope-you-can- I -attend.
18. The school's-is-celebration-Sunday-on-Mother's Day.
19. you-your-How-birthday-celebrate-do?

20. doing-today-are-What-you?

21. is-music-Who-the-choosing?

22. children-not- Birthdays-for-are-just.

23. isn't-at-Salma - Why-party-the?

6. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The boys.............................. (ride) their bikes now.
2. We are.............................. (enjoy) our summer holiday.
3. What.............................. (be) you buying?
4. Are they.............................. (celebrate) at the park?
5. I .... (read) a history book this week.
6. .... (Be) he playing football at the moment?
7. Are they .... (watch) a funny movie?
8. Mom is .... (get) the food ready.
9. My dada.............................. (work) in France this year.
10. The students.............................. (be) practicing hard for a music concert.
11. Where.............................. (is) your parents traveling this week?
12. We are.............................. (help) to make the birthday cake.
13. Are you playing tennis today? - Yes, I .... (be).
14. They.............................. (haven't) enjoying their vacation at the moment.
15. She's studying for her exams.............................. (last) week.
16. We are .... (cycle) today.
17. Hassan and Nour.............................. (have) watching a DVD now.
18. Where.............................. (is) they spending their vacation?

7. Punctuate the following.

1. dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone

2. Birthdays are celebrated all over the world.

3. chinese people are often older



Unit 5 Amazing journeys رحلات مذهلة

Key vocabulary :

voyage	رحلة بحرية	clay	صلصال / طين
journey	رحلة طويلة	farming tools	أدوات زراعة
century	قرن = 100 عام	advanced	متقدم
experience	خبرة – تجربة حياتية	inspiration	الهام
camel	جمل	surprising	مدهش
explorer	مستكشف	the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
diary	مفكرة	archaeologists	علماء آثار
travels	رحلات	complicated	متشابك / معقد
adventure	مغامرة	sculptures	تماثيل منحوتة
discovery	اكتشاف	style	أسلوب / طريقة
dromedary	الجمل العربي	empty	فارغ
fascinated	منبهر / منجذب	drum	طبلة
caravan	قافلة	sand dunes	الكثبان الرملية
legend	أسطورة	wasteland	قفر (أرض خراب)
features	سمات / مميزات	skills	مهارات
on the River Nile	في نهر النيل	route	مسار / طريق
sailing boat	قارب ابحار	on a single day	في يوم واحد
opinion	رأي	informal	غير رسمي
traditional	تقليدي	felucca	فلوكة / مركب شراعي
magical	سحري	mood	الجو العام
peaceful	هادئ		

Definitions

fascinated by	مهتم بـ	very interested in	مهتم جدا بـ
caravan	قافلة	a group of camels and people traveling together	مجموعة من الجمال والأشخاص الذين يسافرون معًا
swaying	التمايل	moving from side to side	تتحرك من جانب إلى آخر
wasteland	قفر	a landscape where nothing lives	منظر طبيعي حيث لا شيء يعيش
wandered	التجول	walked about without a direction	التجول دون اتجاه
legend	أسطورة	a very old and famous story	قصة قديمة جدا ومشهورة
magical	سحري	very enjoyable and exciting	ممتع ومثير للغاية
skills	مهارات	the ability to deal with something well	القدرة على التعامل مع الشيء بشكل جيد
sail	شراع	a large piece of cloth on a boat that makes the wind push the boat	قطعة قماش كبيرة على القارب تجعل الرياح تدفع القارب

Grammar

The Past simple tense | زمن الماضي البسيط

تستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط عند التحدث عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية في الماضي

1. Verb (to Be) in the Past Simple Tense

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was/ wasn't	....
We / You / They / اسم جمع	were / weren't	....

- Ali was at the Pyramids yesterday.
- Ali wasn't at the Pyramids yesterday.
- They were at the school last week.
- They weren't at the school last week.

Yes or No question:

Was	he / she / it / اسم مفرد	.... ?
Were	we / you / they / اسم جمع	.... ?

Was Ali at the Pyramids yesterday? Yes, he was. No, he wasn't.
Were they at the school last week? Yes, they were. No, they weren't.

2. Regular and irregular verbs.

الافعال منتظمة في الماضي نضع لها (d / ed / ied)

Form:

فاعل + inf (d / ed / ied) ....

- I baked cookies yesterday. - He washed the car last week.

الافعال الغير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

present	meaning	past	present	meaning	past
go	يذهب	went	win	يفوز	won
drink	يشرب	drank	buy	يشتري	bought
eat	يأكل	ate	take	يأخذ	took
have / has	يتناول / يمتلك	had	see	يري	saw

- I went to school yesterday. - He saw a bird two hours ago.

Negative:

فاعل + didn't + inf......... .

I didn't bake cookies yesterday. I didn't go to school yesterday.
He didn't wash the car last week. He didn't see a bird two hours ago.

Yes or No Question:

Did + فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل .... ?

Did you go to work? Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

Wh Question:

Q. word + did + فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل .... ?

What did he wash? He washed the car.

Key words:

yesterday	أمس	.... go	منذ ....
in the past	في الماضي	last.........	الماضي.....

Important Paragraphs

The Village of Nok

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible.

قرية نوك

قبل حوالي 100 سنة، وجد السكان المحليون في قرية نوك الصغيرة في نيجيريا بعض الأشياء غير العادية تحت الأرض. كانت هذه الأشياء تماثيل طينية جميلة للبشر. كانت التماثيل كلها بنفس النمط. كانت عادة في وضع الجلوس مع أيديهم على أرجلهم. كانت جودة العمل مذهلة.

Marco Polo Museum

I visited the Marco Polo Museum on my vacation. It's on an island in Croatia called Korčula. It's a really interesting museum all about the travels of Marco Polo. Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He was one of the first people from the West to visit China. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

متحف ماركو بولو

زرت متحف ماركو بولو في عطلة. إنه على جزيرة في كرواتيا تُدعى كوركولا. إنه متحف مثير جداً يروي كل شيء عن رحلات ماركو بولو. كان ماركو بولو مستكشفًا إيطاليًا. كان واحدًا من أول الأشخاص من الغرب الذين زاروا الصين. كان المتحف يحتوي على العديد من الأشياء من الصين القديمة. جعلت القصة الخاصة بماركو بولو حية جدًا.

A trip on a felucca

Last week, I went on a felucca on the River Nile. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A felucca is difficult to sail, but the captain was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. We stopped to see some incredible things along the way.

رحلة على الفلوكة

الأسبوع الماضي، ذهبت في رحلة على فلوكة على نهر النيل. الفلوكة هي قارب شراعي مصري تقليدي. إنها مصنوعة من الخشب. الفلوكة صعبة الإبحار، لكن القبطان كان قويًا جدًا ويمتلك المهارات اللازمة لذلك. كانت الرحلة مذهلة. سافرنا ببطء على طول النهر تحت أشعة الشمس الدافئة. توقفنا لرؤية بعض الأشياء الرائعة على طول الطريق.



Important Sentences

Were there any sand dunes?
هل كانت هناك كثبان رملية؟
Marco Polo was an Italian explorer.
كان ماركو بولو مستكشفًا إيطاليًا.
He went on a long sea voyage.
ذهب في رحلة بحرية طويلة.
Where was your vacation last?
أين كانت عطلتك الأخيرة؟
The music was relaxing and magical.
كانت الموسيقى مريحة وسحرية.
What did they do in the afternoon?
ماذا فعلوا في فترة الظهيرة؟
A felucca is difficult to sail.
الفلوكة صعبة الإبحار.
I had a wonderful experience.
حصلت على تجربة رائعة.
Did he have the skills to sail a felucca?
هل كان يمتلك المهارات للإبحار بالفلوكة؟
What were the dromedaries like?
كيف كانت الجمال ذات السنام الواحد؟
The wind made strange noises.
جعلت الرياح أصواتًا غريبة.
How big are the sand dunes?
كم هي كبيرة كثبان الرمل؟
Did you hear the legend?
هل سمعت الأسطورة؟

The ship didn't leave the port.
لم تغادر السفينة الميناء.
Her success is an inspiration for others.
نجاحها هو مصدر إلهام للآخرين.
There were iron farming tools.
كانت هناك أدوات زراعية من الحديد.
The sculptures had complicated hair styles.
كانت التماثيل تحتوي على تسريحات شعر معقدة.
What were they famous for?!
بماذا كانوا مشهورين؟!
Archaeologists found many sculptures in the area.
عثر علماء الآثار على العديد من التماثيل في المنطقة.
Why is Marco Polo famous?
لماذا ماركو بولو مشهور؟
He sailed by ship to the island.
أبحر بالسفينة إلى الجزيرة.
I went to Hurghada with my family.
ذهبت إلى الغردقة مع عائلتي.
How did you travel there?
كيف سافرت إلى هناك؟
I went to Dahab for a week.
ذهبت إلى دهب لمدة أسبوع.





General Exercises

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(A)

1. Marco Polo is an Italian .... and a writer.
a doctor b teacher c explorer d vet
2. He went to China in the 13th ....
a weak b months c century d decade
3. He wrote a .... about his experiences.
a message b diary c letter d email
4. His diary is called the..................... of Marco Polo.
a travels b works c visits d helps

(B)

1. Many years ago, There was a village called .... in Nigeria.
a Nok b Hook c Stock d Shock
2. Local .... found some unusual objects under the ground.
a visitors b workers c tourists d people
3. These objects were beautiful clay .... of humans.
a sculptures b cups c pans d pots
4.The sculptures were all in the same..................... .
a style b colors c size d shape

(C)

1. Today, I had an amazing..................... .
a experience b meal c drink d food
2. I went on a .... on the River Nile.
a boat b felucca c ship d car
3. It's made of..................... .
a clay b plastic c metal d wood
4. The .... of the boat was called Kareem.
a teacher b nurse c vet d captain

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It .... a difficult journey. It took years!
a have b do c were d was
2. They don't know anything about this culture. It's a ....
a story b file c mystery d project
3. Did you .... the Pyramids?
a visiting b eat c wash d cut
4. To ....means to move from side to side.
a sway b ask c dream d explore
5. The village was quiet and.....................I could sleep well.
a nervous b scary c peaceful d noisy

6. He.................... music in the party yesterday.

a ate b washed c studied d cooked

7. We went on a trip in the.................... sunshine.

a metal b plastic c warm d cold

8. Koshari is a/an.................... Egyptian meal.

a traditional b modern c weak d international

9. When they were lost, they.................... without any directions

a wandered b spoke c drank d ate

10. A/An..............is a group of camels and people traveling together.

a oasis b cave c caravan d valley

11. They went towards the empty.................... of the desert.

a ocean b farm c wasteland d river

13. Marco Polo.........sure they had enough food and water.

a made b making c makes d make

15. We................ a great time at the party yesterday.

a ate b drank c had d were

16. The farmer used the farming.................... to cut the dead tree.

a paper b tools c spoons stones d water

17. The pyramids have very.................... stones

a weak b soft c small d large

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

amazing - ugly- captain - felucca

Last week, I went on a felucca on the River Nilel. A (1).................. is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A felucca is difficult to sail, but the (2)...................... was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was (3)...................... . We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine.

humans - information - advanced - tools

People found sculptures in Nok in Nigeria. Archaeologists went there to study them. The Nok culture was (1) ....and its people made sculptures from clay, and other farming (2)...................from iron and stone. Their sculptures were usually of (3)........................These sculptures were beautifully made and had large eyes and hair styles.

fascinated - dunes - wind - rain

Marco Polo was twenty-one when he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was (1) .... by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the (2) .... were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long. Their shapes were always changing. The (3)........... made them move and roll like huge yellow waves.

4. Read the text and answer the questions:

Rana went on a trip with her family to Marco Polo Museum. They went on a big ship. It's on an island called Korcula. It's a very interesting museum all about the travels of Marco Polo, Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. Marco Polo wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called The Travels of Marco Polo. Traveling to China was very difficult. The journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Marco Polo went on a long voyage by.................. .

a) air   b) land   c) car   d) ship

2. The underlined word "interesting" is the opposite of "......................"

a) nice   b) boring   c) great   d) wonderful

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Rana go with her family?

....

4. What is this text about?

....

5. Where is Marco Polo Museum?

....

Today, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.

We stopped to see some incredible things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome ! The Pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We stopped to see some .... things along the way.

a) incredible   b) bad   c) ugly   d) normal

2. The opposite of the underlined word "strong" is "........................" .

a) fast   b) mysterious   c) brave   d) weak

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Describe the captain of the boat.

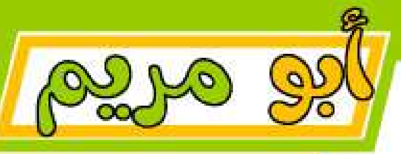
....

4. What is this text about?

....

5. What is the felucca?

....



5. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. is-famous-Polo – Why-Marco?

....

2. sailed-He-ship-the island-by-to.

....

3. with -I-my family-went-to-Hurghada.

....

4. travel-How-you-did-there?

....

5. for-Dahab-I-to-went-a week.

....

6. is-the-Her success-inspiration-others-for.

....

9. iron-There-farming-were-tools.

....

10. hair-The sculptures-complicated-had-styles

....

11. famous-What-were-for-they?!

....

12. many-Archaeologists-in-found-the area-s -sculptures.

....

13.were-What-like-dromedaries- the?

....

14. wind-noises-made-The-strange

....

15. How-dunes-are-the-big-sand?

....

16. you-legend-Did-the-hear?

....

17. ship-port-didn't-The-leave-the.

....

18. relaxing-was-The – music-and-magical.

....

19. they-the afternoon – What-in-did-do?

....

20. is-A felucca-to-sail-difficult.

....

21. experience-had-a-I-wonderful.

....

22. Did-the skills-have-to sail-he-a felucca?

....

23. any – Were – dunes-there –sand?

....

24. Italian – an – Marco-was – explorer – Polo.

....

25. sea – He-a long – went on – by-voyage.

....

26. was-your-vacation – Where-last?

....

6. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The English exam.......................... (be) very easy last week.
2. We.................................. (go) on vacation last month.
3. Did you ....(watched) the match?
4. No, I .... (did) find my lost book.
5. What......................... (does) they use to make paper in the past?
6. Hazem.................. (be) angry with his brother yesterday.
7. We.................................. (have) a great time at the Carnival last week.
8. Noha and Gameela.................................. (make) pizza last night..
9. He didn't.................................. (went) on the vacation with his family
10. Did your mom.................................. (had) a new dress for the party?
11. Where did you.................................. (found) your books?
12. .... (Be) there any children on the trip yesterday?

7. Punctuate the following.

1. how big are the sand dunes

....

2. Welcome back samir.

....

3. marco polo went into the Gobi Desert for the first time.

....



Unit 6 Taking Care الاعتناء

Key vocabulary :

Ice cream sticks	اعواد الايس كريم	Drops of oil	قطرات زيت
popsicle sticks	اعواد المصاصه	squeeze	يعصر
wax	شمع خام	stir	يقلب
heat	يسخن	press	يضغط
barley	شعير	festivals	احتفالات
herbs	أعشاب	flood	فيضان
caretakers	مقدمي الرعاية - مشرفين	crown	تاج
Scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)	throne	عرش (الملك / الملكة)
dust	تراب	astonished	مذهول
toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان	Shampoo	شامبو
incense	بخور	hairbrush	فرشاة شعر
powder	مسحوق	festival	مهرجان / احتفال
cone shape	شكل مخروطي	mint candy	حلوى النعناع
herbs	أعشاب	kapet	كابت نوع من العطور
recipe	وصفة	oven	فرن
packaged	معلبة / معبأة	salt dough	عجينة الملح
spices	توابل	plain	سادة
cooking	الطهي	besides	بجانب
medicine	دواء	combinations	مكونات
perfume	عطر		

Definitions

caretakers	الراعيين	people who look after and clean a building	الأشخاص الذين يعتنون بالمبنى وينظفونه
leaning	الاتكاء	to sit against	الجلوس الى جنب
astonished	مندهش	To be amazed	أن تكون مندهش
dust	غبار	means dry powder of waste	يعني مسحوق النفايات الجافة



Grammar

Countable and uncountable nouns — الأسماء التي تعد و التي لا تعد

الأسماء التي تعد لها مفرد وجمع - الاسم المفرد الذي يعد يسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an) - الاسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد

an apple	تفاحة	apples

a few / **a little**

قليل من (تأتي قبل الأسماء الجمع)	قليل من (تأتي قبل الأسماء الغير المعدودة)
- a few lemons	- a little oil

a lot of / **a lot of**

كثير من (تأتي قبل الأسماء الجمع)	كثير من (تأتي قبل الأسماء الغير المعدودة)
- a lot of apples	- a lot of rice

some

بعض (تأتي قبل الأسماء الجمع)	بعض (تأتي قبل الأسماء الغير المعدودة)
- some apples	- some rice

any

أي (تأتي قبل الأسماء الجمع)	أي (تأتي قبل الأسماء الغير المعدودة)
- any apples	- any rice

نستخدم some في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة و سؤال عرض / طلب.

- There is some cheese.
- There are some eggs.
- Would you like some tea? عرض
- Can you give me some money? طلب

نستخدم any في الجمل الخبرية المنفية أو سؤال ولا عرض ولا طلب (تسأل فقط عن وجود الشئ)

- There isn't any cheese.
- There aren't any eggs.
- Is there any water?
- Do you have any books?

How many .... ? / **How much .... ?**

كم عدد (تأتي قبل الأسماء الجمع)	كم كمية (تأتي قبل الأسماء الغير المعدودة)
How many books	How much water

Ex. How many lemons do we need?
- We need five lemons.

ex. How much oil do we need?
- We need a little oil .





Important Paragraphs

Making Candles

To make candles, we need some wax. Palm wax from Egyptian palm trees makes very nice candles. We also need some perfume oil. We squeeze about 40 drops of this oil to make three candles. We can press flowers on the tops of the candles. We need one glass and one wick for each candle. To hold the wick up, we use popsicle sticks. Finally, we heat the wax until it melts, then stir it well.

لصنع الشموع، نحتاج إلى بعض الشمع. شمع النخيل من أشجار النخيل المصرية يصنع شموعًا جميلة جدًا. نحتاج أيضًا إلى بعض زيت العطر. نضغط حوالي 40 قطرة من هذا الزيت لصنع ثلاث شموع. يمكننا الضغط على الأزهار على قمة الشموع. نحتاج إلى كأس واحدة وفتيل واحد لكل شمعة. لرفع الفتيل، نستخدم عصي المصاص. أخيرًا، نقوم بتسخين الشمع حتى يذوب، ثم نحركه جيدًا.

Ancient Egyptians' Food

The Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and ate well. They ate many vegetables and fruits. They used wheat and barley to make bread. Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat. They likely ate some fish and birds, as well as eggs and cheese. They used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. Dates and figs were also used to make sweet drinks. Some families used spices and herbs to make their food taste better.

كان المصريون القدماء يهتمون بأجسامهم ويتناولون الطعام بشكل جيد. كانوا يأكلون الكثير من الخضروات والفواكه. استخدموا القمح والشعير لصنع الخبز. معظم الناس في مصر القديمة كانوا يأكلون القليل من اللحوم. ربما أكلوا بعض الأسماك والطيور، وكذلك البيض والجبن. استخدموا العسل مع الخبز والكريمة لصنع الكعك. كما استخدموا التمر أو التين لصنع مشروبات حلوة. بعض العائلات استخدمت التوابل والأعشاب لجعل طعامهم ألذ.

Personal Care in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians used many of the same products we use today for personal care. They loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. They used a type of toothbrush to clean their teeth, and they also made toothpaste. They made mint candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.

استخدم المصريون القدماء العديد من المنتجات التي نستخدمها اليوم للعناية الشخصية. كانوا يحبون العطور القوية. وكان العطر الأكثر شعبية يسمى "كابت". استخدموا نوعًا من فرش الأسنان لتنظيف أسنانهم. كما صنعوا معجون الأسنان. صنعوا أيضًا حلوى بالنعناع للحفاظ على فمهم منعشًا طوال اليوم.

Egyptian Flavors

Egypt is famous for its spices, used in home cooking and restaurants across the country. Special mixes of different spices are secret ingredients in many recipes. But what else can we do with spices besides cooking? We can also use them to make perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs, beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

مصر مشهورة بتوابلها، التي تُستخدم في الطهي المنزلي والمطاعم في جميع أنحاء البلاد. الخلطات الخاصة من التوابل المختلفة هي مكونات سرية في العديد من الوصفات. ولكن ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل أيضًا بالتوابل بجانب الطهي؟ يمكننا استخدامها لصنع العطور والأدوية وتلوين الأقمشة. كما أنها تعتبر تذكارات رائعة، ومُعبأ بشكل جميل للسياح الذين يزورون محلات التوابل والأسواق.

Salt Dough

To make salt dough, you need 1 cup of plain flour (about 250 g), 1/2 cup of salt (about 125 g), and 1/2 cup of water (about 125 ml). First, preheat the oven to a low temperature. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Gradually add the water, stirring until the mixture forms a ball. Place the dough on a flat surface and shape it as you like. You can roll it flat to cut out shapes or use it to create 3D objects. After shaping, put your items on a baking tray and bake for 3 hours. Let them cool, then paint them.

لصنع عجينة الملح، تحتاج إلى كوب واحد من الدقيق العادي (حوالي 250 جرامًا)، نصف كوب من الملح (حوالي 125 جرامًا)، ونصف كوب من الماء (حوالي 125 مل). أولاً، سخن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة. اخلط الدقيق والملح في وعاء كبير. أضف الماء تدريجيًا مع التحريك حتى تتشكل كرة من العجينة. ضع العجينة على سطح مستوٍ وشكلها كما تريد. يمكنك فردها لقطع الأشكال أو استخدامها لصنع أجسام ثلاثية الأبعاد. بعد التشكيل، ضع القطع على صينية الخبز واخبزها لمدة 3 ساعات. اتركها لتبرد ثم قم بطلائها.





Important Sentences

There are six ingredients in the recipe.
هناك ستة مكونات في الوصفة.
Heat the butter to melt it.
سخن الزبدة لتذوب.
The king holds a scepter in his hand.
يمسك الملك صولجانًا في يده.
How many petals are in a flower?
كم عدد البتلات في الزهرة ؟
Why was the princess in danger?
لماذا كانت الأميرة في خطر؟
Egypt is famous for its spices.
مصر مشهورة بتوابلها.
Mix the ingredients in a big bowl.
اخلط المكونات في وعاء كبير.
The tables have flat surfaces.
الطاولات لها أسطح مستوية.
What do we need to make a cake?
ماذا نحتاج لصنع كعكة؟
Where does the royal family live?
أين تعيش العائلة المالكة؟
I need to have a bath.
أحتاج إلى أخذ حمام.
Peter found the missing king.
وجد بيتر الملك المفقود.
The rooms are full of precious things.
الغرف مليئة بالأشياء الثمينة.
The king had a long scepter in his hand.
كان لدى الملك صولجان طويل في يده.
The Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.
صنع المصريون القدماء حلوى النعناع.

Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush.
استخدم المصريون القدماء نوعًا من فرش الأسنان.
What do we use shampoo for?
لماذا نستخدم الشامبو؟
They used flowers to make perfumes.
استخدموا الأزهار لصنع العطور.
What is cinnamon useful for?
ما فائدة القرفة؟
What did the Ancient Egyptians drink?
ماذا كان يشرب المصريون القدماء ؟
Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies.
اعتنى المصريون القدماء بأجسامهم .
Herbs are plants with a strong taste.
الأعشاب هي نباتات ذات طعم قوي.
There are some mangoes and grapes.
هناك بعض المانجو والعنب.
We need some popsicle sticks.
نحتاج إلى بعض عصي المصاص.
How much wax do we need?
كم نحتاج من الشمع ؟
I think you need some perfume.
أعتقد أنك بحاجة إلى بعض العطر.
We can use perfume oil to make candles.
يمكننا استخدام زيت العطر لصنع الشموع .
These flowers smell lovely.
هذه الزهور رائحتها جميلة.



General Exercises

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(A)

1. There were a lot of.............. in Ancient Egypt.
a birds b horses c bees d butterflies
2. There was........ in Ancient Egypt.
a honey b oil c perfume d juice
3. Ancient Egyptians used honey with bread and......... to make cakes.
a jam b cream c milk d oil
4. They used a few......... or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.
a vegetables b apples c eggs d dates

(B)

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong...................... .
a perfumes b animals c people d food
2. The most .... perfume was called kapet.
a comfortable b dangerous c popular d modern
3. Kapet was...................... .
a cheap b expensive c inexpensive d ugly
4. Kapet had a lot of ....
a water b iol c ingredients d milk

(c)

1. Mix the flour and salt in a large............
a bowl b ball c oven d recipe
2. Cut.......... the salt dough into shapes.
a next b out c down d under
3. I put the dough on a baking.......... in the oven.
a ball b tray c paper d book
4. Can you tell me the.............. to make chocolate cake?
a numbers b homework c ingredients d lessons

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He put the.................. the king's head.
a crown b chair c palace d statue
2. They were when they found the museum empty.
a heavy b difficult c astonished d closed
3. This royal ring is...................... . It costs a lot of money.
a precious b broken c cheap d weak
4. She likes to add .... to her food.
a soap b spices c toothpaste d minerals
5. Tourists buy Egyptian................... as a present for their families.
a secrets b products c traditions d habits

6. She heated the mixture over a ....

a candy b fridge c fire d cream

7. You can add two............................. of oil.

a slices b drops c pieces d bits

8. She uses a wooden........................ for her hair.

a toothbrush b soap c hairbrush d shampoo

9. We make bread from...................... .

a juice b meat c bees d wheat

10. They use salt to............. fish for a long time.

a preserve b book c read d grow

11. Mom uses special................ to make her cooking taste amazing.

a herbs b planes c roads d pots

12. He cut the............... of the flowers to use it.

a petals b ropes c hands d drops

13. A wick is a little cotton .... inside the candle.

a stick b drop c rope d tree

14. .... the wax to melt it, then stir it well.

a Beat b Heat c Cook d Hold

15. Put little sugar in the tea and.............it .

a cut b stir c drop d throw

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

grass - Ancient - cheese - festivals

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! Most people in (1) .... Egypt ate a little meat. They usually ate meat at (2) .... They also ate some eggs and (3).................... from cows or goats.

garlic - wear - grew - bread

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers. They (1)................ a lot of fruit and vegetables. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, (2).................... , lentils, and beans. People cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley. People used this to make (3).................... and they ate a lot of this every day.

legs - candies - teeth - perfumes

Ancient Egyptians used many of the products we use today for personal care. They loved strong (1)...................... . The most popular perfume was called kapet . They used a type of toothbrush to clean their (3)...................... . They also made toothpaste. They made mint (3)...................... to keep their mouth fresh all day.

4. Read the text and answer the questions:

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of

which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The most popular perfume was called.................. .

a) moon b) kapet c) sun d) Amoon

2. The underlined word "expensive" is the opposite of "..........." shape.

a) cheap b) common c) difficult d) precious

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why was kapet expensive?

....

4. What is the main idea of the text?

....

5. What can you see in Ancient Egyptian paintings?

....

5. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. sticks-We-some-need-popsicle.

....

2. need-wax-do-How-we-much?

....

3. think-need-I-you- perfume - some.

....

4. perfume-We can-oil-use-candles-to make .

....

5. flowers-lovely-These-smell.

....

6. did-Ancient-the-drink-What-Egyptians?

....

7. Egyptians-care-of their-Ancient-took-bodies.

....

8. a strong-plants-Herbs-with-are-taste.

....

9. mangoes-There-some-grapes-and-are.

....

10. royal-live-Where-family-do-the?

....

11. have-I-a-bath-need-to.

....

12. melt - Heat- to -butter- it - the.

....

13. are-of-things- The rooms - full - precious.

....

14. had-The king - a long-his- scepter - hand-in.

....

15. Egyptians-mint-The Ancient -made- candies -.

....

16. Egyptians - a type - Ancient - used - toothbrush - of.

....

17. shampoo-for-we-What-use- do?

....

18. flowers- make - They-perfumes-to-used.

....

19. holds - The king - hand - a scepter - in - his.

....

20. spices-Egypt-famous-its-is-for

....

21. bowl-Mix-ingredients-in-a big - the.

....

22. have-tables-The-surfaces - flat.

....

23. need to a cake - make-What-do-we?

....

24. are - in -ingredients - There - six - the recipe.

....

6. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. There are.......................... (a little) leaves in the tree.
2. We don't have........................ (many) time. Please hurry.
3. We need.......................... (a few) oil.
4. How ....(much) ingredients are in the recipe?
5. We don't have ....(some) water.
6. She uses a.......................... (few) butter to cook.
7. Are there .... (some) chocolate chip cookies left?
8. This recipe needs.......................... (any) butter and sugar.
9. How.......................... (much) candles are in the box?
10. How .... (many) milk do we have to make cake?
11. There.......................... (is) any bread. Please, buy some.
12. There aren't.......................... (some) oranges on the table
13. We need .... (a little) lemons to make juice.

7. Punctuate the following.

1. put the ingredients for your soap in a bowl ....
2. how much wax do we need ....
3. What did ancient egyptian drink ? ....



Listening Script

Unit 1

A) I am Maryam. I help my aunt in a community garden. She lives in an apartment block. We grow vegetable and firuits to eat. We also can sell them in the market. We use natural fertilizers. Plants help to clean the air.

B) In the countryside, a giant lives in a village. He has a wonderful garden. There are colorful birds singing in the trees. The local childrencome to play in the giant's garden.

C) New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night. There are lots of different restaurants in New York. The food in New York doesn't look like food at home.

D) Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas. We plant trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature. It helps to protect our wildlife.

Unit 2

Elephants are the largest land animals. They live in Africa and Asia.. Elephants have long trunks. They use their trunks to get food and drink water. Elephants love to eat leaves and grass. They have big ears.

Hatem is a new student at our school. He is very polite and clever. Zaid is Hatem's new friend who helps him get to know the school. Zaid takes Hatem around and shows him where his classrooms are. Hazem is very happy.

The west court is a large open area in our school. There is a playground and playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

The weather is sunny. The hare lies in the grass. It feels hungry. The hare likes to eat carrots. The hare remembers the carrots that it keeps at home. The hare runs back home to eat them.

Unit 3

In July, Eyad visits his grandparents. He stays with them in their house near the beach. He goes fishing in the mornings with his grandpa. In the evenings, he meets his friends and they play football or ride their bikes. Eyad sometimes helps his grandma in the kitchen. Eyad is kind and helpful.

Danny was a deer. He had brown fur and a white tail. He had long horns on his head. They were strong and sharp. He liked to eat lots of plants. His favorite food was corn. Danny was a fast deer. He could jump very high. He was hard to catch.

Last year, I visited Sharm El-Sheikh with my family. It is an interesting and busy city. There are a lot of things to see and do there. You can swim in the sea, relax on the beach or you can go quad biking in the desert.

Unit 4

I'm studying hard for my exams. They will start next month. I organize my day. I study three hours a day. In my free time, I get outside and do some exercise. I go running with my friends in the morning. I know it is important to study hard and relax, too.



Festivals and feasts are special times when people meet together and celebrate. Sham El-Nessim is an Egyptian festival. It is always on Monday. Its history goes back to the Ancient Egyptians. It is a holiday in Egypt. People eat special food on this day which is called fesikh.

Injy had a birthday party last Sunday. There were many of her friends. They played a lot of games. They had desserts. Her mom made a delicious cake. They played music and danced. Injy had a lot of presents. Her parents gave her a beautiful ring for her birthday present.

Unit 5

Marco Polo is an Italian explorer and a writer. He is one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went to China in the 13th century. He wrote a diary about his experiences. The diary is called The Travels of Marco Polo.

Many years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs.

Today, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. The captain of the boat was called Kareem. He is a tall and strong man. The trip was amazing. The boat had two sails which moved gently in the wind.

Unit 6

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! Ancient Egyptians often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. Kapet was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients. It had a few common herbs and spices in it.

Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Cut down the salt dough into shapes. I put the dough on a baking tray in the oven.Can you tell me the ingredients to make chocolate cake?



كيفية طباعة صفحات معينة من ملف معين



مثلا ازاى نطبع الصفحات من صفحة 4 الى صفحة 9

خطوة 1

خطوة 2
اختيار اسم الطابعة بتاعتك

خطوة 3
كتابة الصفحات المراد طباعتها
نكتب رقم 4 ثم نكتب الشرطة دي ـ ثم نكتب 9

خطوة 4
اختيار نوع الورق

خطوة 5
اختيار A4

خطوة 6